

hugo

JAPANESE

in THREE MONTHS



www.irlanguage.com

IR
Language

مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان

SIMPLIFIED LANGUAGE COURSE

Hugo's Simplified System

Japanese in Three Months

John Breen



Hugo's Language Books



A DORLING KINDERSLEY BOOK

This new and enlarged edition published in Great Britain in 1998 by Hugo's Language Books, an imprint of Dorling Kindersley Limited, 9 Henrietta Street, London WC2E 8PS

Visit us on the World Wide Web at www.dk.com

Copyright 1997, 1998 © Dorling Kindersley Ltd
2 4 6 8 10 9 7 5 3 1

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record is available from the British Library.
ISBN 0 85285 314 9

Japanese in Three Months is also available in a pack of four cassettes, ISBN 0 85285 315 7

Written by

John Breen Ph.D. (Cantab)
Senior Lecturer in Japanese at the
School of Oriental and African Studies,
University of London

Set in 10/12pt Palatino by
Alastair Wardle
Printed and bound by Legoprint, Italy

Contents

<i>Introduction</i>	5	<i>Chapter 6</i>	63
		Adjectives	
<i>Pronunciation</i>	8	Adverbs	
		Exercise & conversations	
<i>Chapter 1</i>	12	<i>Chapter 7</i>	74
Some useful expressions		The <i>te</i> form of verbs and adjectives: its formation and applications	
<i>Chapter 2</i>	15	Exercise & conversations	
Statements			
Questions: <i>is/isn't ...?</i>			
Answering questions			
Possession			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 3</i>	25	<i>Chapter 8</i>	85
Questions: <i>who/where/what ...? etc.</i>		<i>Is/are, was/were doing</i>	
Location expressions		<i>Has/have, had done</i>	
Some particles: <i>to/from/with, etc.</i>		<i>Has/have, had been doing</i>	
Exercise & conversations		Duration of time	
<i>Chapter 4</i>	37	Exercise & conversations	
Verbs and subjects			
(<i>wa</i> and <i>ga</i>)			
Verbs and objects			
(<i>wa</i> , <i>e</i> and <i>ni</i>)			
The past tense			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 5</i>	49	<i>Chapter 9</i>	96
Numbers		Verbs: formation of plain forms	
Time		Some idiomatic usages of these	
Dates		'Why ...?' 'Because ...'	
Numerical expressions		Idiomatic expressions:	
Exercise & conversations		<i>probably, I wonder, may/be,</i>	
		<i>intend to, should</i>	
		Exercise & conversations	
<i>Chapter 10</i>			
Verbs of giving and receiving			
Doing things for people			
Having things done			
Exercise and conversations			
<i>Chapter 11</i>			
Indirect speech: statements, questions, commands			
Miscellaneous expressions			
Exercise & conversations			

<i>Chapter 12</i>	128	<i>Chapter 18</i>	187
Like/dislike		If ... clauses	
Want (someone) to do		Some related expressions	
More on <i>tsu/ga</i>		Exercise & conversations	
More on <i>naru/narimasu</i>			
More on <i>yō ni</i>			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 13</i>	139	<i>Chapter 19</i>	196
Appearance: <i>appears to be/</i>		The passive, the causative and the	
<i>looks like</i>		passive causative	
Feel, sense, taste, smell, etc.		Exercise & conversations	
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 14</i>	147	<i>Chapter 20</i>	206
Relative clauses, simple and		Summary of informal and	
complex		honorific language	
<i>Someone/something</i>		Conversations	
<i>Nobody/nothing</i>			
<i>Anybody/anything</i>			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 15</i>	157	<i>Mini-dictionary:</i>	238
Must (not)/may (not)/can (not)		English-Japanese	
Some uses of <i>koto</i> and <i>no</i> with			
verbs			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 16</i>	168	<i>Mini-dictionary:</i>	251
Comparing things		Japanese-English	
Superlatives			
Exercise & conversations			
<i>Chapter 17</i>	177	<i>Appendix 1</i>	267
Some expressions of time: <i>before,</i>			
<i>after, while, when, etc.</i>			
Exercise & conversations			

Introduction

Japanese has a reputation as an extremely difficult language to learn, if not an impossible one. Yet there is no doubt that the difficulties are greatly overstated. For example, in studying the language you'll encounter few problems with the pronunciation. Individual Japanese sounds are easy to master. Moreover, Japanese, unlike Chinese (with which it shares no common roots) does not have awkward sound combinations, nor does it have tricky tonal variations. Japanese is also without the stress accents found in English. It is spoken rather in a monotone. Grammatically, Japanese is altogether different from English and other European languages (and indeed from Chinese), but the simple explanations and the abundant examples that have been provided will enable you to grasp with the minimum of effort the special grammatical features of the language. By the end of the course, you will be able to understand – and to be understood – in a wide variety of situations, and you will also have some thousand items of useful vocabulary under your belt.

In this book, all the Japanese is given for convenience in romanized form. While the Japanese are, of course, able to read their own language in this romanized form (*rōmaji* they call it), they do in fact use three quite different writing systems: *hiragana*, *katakana* and *kanji*. Appendix 1 gives an introduction to *hiragana*, while Appendix 2 contains a selection of the more common *katakana* and *kanji* which the visitor is likely to see in the streets of Japan.

Something needs to be said about the format of the course. The examples used to illustrate grammatical points are given for the most part with the English first and the Japanese second. Experiments suggest that the traditional method, where the language being learnt comes before the translation in English, slows down the learning process.

The method adopted here, however, will enable you to learn quickly what can and what cannot be said in Japanese. Where possible, related grammatical items are grouped together, and at the end of each group you will find a translation exercise. There is another type of exercise too: occasionally you will be asked to 'check that you can form ...' (say, the past tense of a selection of verbs). This exercise requires you to cover up the answers, which are provided in the right-hand column of the page, and to form the past tense unaided. You can then check your answers against those printed. Each chapter closes with a conversational dialogue together with notes that relate to particular points arising within this. The conversations cover grammatical items recently explained, while the notes amplify those explanations where necessary and provide translations of 'difficult' words or phrases. For a chapter to be considered completed, go over all the examples and exercises a second time, covering up the appropriate columns to make sure that you can translate confidently from and into both languages. All the vocabulary is placed for convenience at the end of the book, but it may be a useful exercise to compile your own vocabulary lists for each individual chapter and commit the new words to memory.

The final thing to say is that the single greatest problem in learning the language is in overcoming the 'culture gap'. Japanese is spoken by people from a social and cultural background entirely different from our own, and you will undoubtedly find that the learning process is made much easier if you take the trouble to read some introductory books on Japanese society and culture. Joy Hendry's *Understanding Japanese Society* is recommended as a standard and readily obtainable work. It contains chapters on a variety of subjects, including one on the language.

Abbreviations

In the vocabulary lists and occasionally in the chapters you will see the following conventional abbreviations:

<i>adj.</i>	adjective
<i>adv.</i>	adverb
<i>lit.</i>	literally
<i>n.</i>	noun
<i>vt.</i>	transitive verb (one that takes a direct object)
<i>vi.</i>	intransitive verb (one that does not)

J: Throughout the chapters, where model sentences are given in English and Japanese, the English sentence will sometimes contain within parentheses a letter *J*: followed by more English. This *J*: means 'the Japanese treat this in the following way' – the phrase or word formation that comes after it will show you how.

A ... B: Where these letters appear underlined, they stand for a noun and/or an adjective, etc. which for simplicity's sake has been omitted from the construction being explained.

A and *B* (in italics) will be found against the English model sentences that represent a 'question and answer' routine or where the Japanese for *B* is constructed in a way that is dependent on *A*.

In the conversations, initial letters indicate who is speaking.

Pronunciation

Japanese sounds, unlike those in English, are best thought of as being composed of syllables rather than of vowels and consonants. The table below gives you all the possible individual syllables in Japanese. You will see that these syllables may combine to give a number of other sounds. As a first exercise, practise the sounds in the table – after you've read notes 1–10 and listened to the pronunciation tape (if you've got our Cassette Course):

Column:	1	2	3	4	5
Row 1	a	i	u	e	o
2	ka	ki	ku	ke	ko
3	ga	gi	gu	ge	go
4	sa	shi	su	se	so
5	za	ji	zu	ze	zo
6	ta	chi	tsu	te	to
7	da	ji	zu	de	do
8	na	ni	nu	ne	no
9	ha	hi	fu	he	ho
10	ba	bi	bu	be	bo
11	pa	pi	pu	pe	po
12	ma	mi	mu	me	mo
13	ya	—	yu	—	yo
14	ra	ri	ru	re	ro
15	wa	—	—	—	n

- 1) The 'a' sound of the syllables in column 1 (a, ka, ga, sa etc.) is pronounced much the same as the vowel sound in the French word *chat*, somewhere between the 'a' in *cat* and the 'u' in *cut*.
- 2) The 'i' sound of the syllables in column 2 (i, ki, gi, shi etc.) is pronounced rather similar to the vowel sound in *wit*.

- 3) The 'u' sound of the syllables in column 3 (u, ku, gu, su etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *could*.
- 4) The 'e' sound of the syllables in column 4 (e, ke, ge, se etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *get*.
- 5) The 'o' sound of the syllables in column 5 (o, ko, go, so etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *cot*.
- 6) The 'g' sound of the syllables of row 3 is generally pronounced hard as in *get*, but sometimes soft as in *sing*.
- 7) The 'n' sound of the syllables of row 8 is pronounced as in *no*.
- 8) The one consonant in Japanese, n, comes only at the end of a syllable; it is pronounced 'ng' as in *sing*.
- 9) The 'f' sound in the syllable fu (row 9, column 3) is not hard like the English 'f' in *flip*. It is much lighter and is made by blowing gently through slightly parted lips.
- 10) The 'r' sound in the syllables of row 14 is not heard in English. It is a sound which lies somewhere between the English 'r' and 'l', and is often rather close to a 'd' sound. It is made by tapping with the tip of the tongue against the gum behind the top front teeth.

Vowel combinations and other points

More sounds can be created in Japanese by combining certain syllables:

- a) By combining syllables in column 1 (a, ka, ga etc.) with i (column 2, row 1) you get ai (and kai, gai etc.), which is pronounced similar to the English eye.
- b) By combining syllables in column 4 (e, ke, ge etc.) with i you get ei (and kel, gel etc.), which is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *wait*.

- c) By combining syllables of column 2 (ki, gi, shi etc.) with those of row 13 (ya, yu, yo) you get k'ya, g'ya, sh'ya etc.; k'yu, g'yu, sh'yu etc.; k'yo, g'yo, sh'yo etc. For convenience, these sounds will be written without the apostrophe: kya, kyu, kyo etc.
- d) Syllables of any column may combine with row 1 of the same column to make a 'long syllable': e.g. a, ka, ga plus a gives aa, kaa, gaa. Conventionally, such long syllables are transcribed with what is known as a macron: ā, kā, gā etc.; ī, kī, gī etc.; ō, kō, gō etc. They are pronounced as a single unbroken sound twice the length of the corresponding short syllable. N.B.: It is very common for foreign speakers of Japanese to make the mistake of not heeding long vowel sounds when they occur. This can often totally alter the meaning of the word – for example, o-ba-san means 'aunt' whereas o-bā-san means 'grandmother'.
- e) Something needs to be said about what appear from the romanized Japanese to be double consonants, as in *katta* ('bought'). Strictly speaking, these are not double consonants. They are in fact a type of combined syllable (see Appendix 1, page 268). However, here it has been thought sensible to follow the conventional romanization and render them as 'double consonants'. As far as pronunciation is concerned, where the 'consonant' is doubled it must be held for an extra beat. This is not dissimilar to the effect created in English with words like *home-made* or *Ben-Nevis*. Failure to observe the pronunciation of these 'double consonants' is another common error made by the non-native speaker, and can again totally alter the meaning of a word – for example, *katta* means 'bought' whereas *kata* means 'shoulder'.
- f) Finally, a word on devoicing. The 'i' sound in the syllable *shi* is devoiced, so that *shita* ('below', 'under') is pronounced 'shta'. Also, the 'u' sound is often devoiced in the syllables of column 3, such as *ku* and *gu*, but particularly *su*: the style of Japanese wrestling known as *sumō* is pronounced 'smō', and *desu* (the verb 'to be') is generally pronounced 'dess'.

Pronunciation practice (1)

Practise the following words (with the aid of the cassettes if you have them), not forgetting the few rules given above, and taking care not to impose English rhythm on the words – particularly those with which you may be familiar:

Ikeda (family name)	shashin (photo)
karate	shujutsu (operation)
sake (rice wine)	shūkan (custom)
Tanaka (family name)	o-ba-san (aunt)
Nagasaki	o-bā-san (grandmother)
Hitachi	Kyōto
Hiroshima	shōgun
yama (mountain)	sumō
shita (beneath, below)	sukiyaki (meat dish)
Matsushita	Kyūshū
kudasai (please)	Tōkyō
geisha	dōjō (martial arts hall)
samurai	ana (hole)
hai (yes)	anna (that sort of)
rei (example)	kata (shoulder)
kyonon (last year)	katta (bought)

Pronunciation practice (2)

In Japanese there exist quite a few words of foreign origin, and it is essential that you should pronounce these in the Japanese way. Below is a selection of the more common imported words:

apāto (apartment)	tabako (cigarettes)
uisukī (whisky)	tēburu (table)
karēraisu (curry rice)	depāto (department store)
kōhī (coffee)	sunakku bā (bar)
koppu (cup)	hoteru (hotel)
sakkā (soccer)	fuirumu (film for camera)
shatsu (shirt)	miruku (milk)
takushī (taxi)	basu (bus)
naifu (knife)	fuōku (fork)

Chapter 1

In this chapter, you will be consolidating your understanding of the pronunciation points while learning some basic greetings and conversational phrases. Read the following out loud, listen to the cassette if you have it, and refer back to the previous pages if you still have doubts about pronunciation.

A: What is your name?

B: My name's Tanaka.

A: Hello, Yumiko!
B: Hello!

A: Good morning, Mr Tanaka!

B: Good morning, Mrs Brown!

A: Good evening, Sir!
B: Good evening.

A: Good night, Kunio.
B: Good night.

A: Goodbye!
B: Goodbye!

A: Excuse me
(but I must be off).
B: Goodbye!

A: Pleased to meet you.
B: Pleased to meet you too.

O-namae wa nan to
osshaimasu ka.

Tanaka to mōshimasu.

Konnichi wa, Yumiko-san!
Konnichi wa.

O-hayō gozaimasu,
Tanaka-san!

O-hayō gozaimasu,
Buraun-san!

Sensei², konban wa.
Konban wa.

O-yasumi nasai, Kunio-kun³.
O-yasumi nasai.

Sayōnara.
Sayōnara.

Shitsurei shimasu.

Sayōnara.

Hajimemashite.
Hajimemashite, dōzo
yoroshiku⁴.

A: How are you?
B: Very well thank you.

A: How are you?
B: Fine.

A: It's been a long time,
hasn't it?

B: Yes, it's been a long time.

A: Thank you very much.

B: It's a pleasure.

A: Thank you.

B: No, thank you.

A: Thanks.

B: Not at all.

A: I'm sorry.

B: That's all right.

A: Here you are!

B: Thank you very much.

A: After you.

B: Thank you.

A: Come in!

B: Thank you.

A: I'm off now.

B: See you later.

A: I'm back.

B: Hello.

A: Excuse me, is anyone there?
B: Yes, just a minute, please.

A: Cheers!

B: Cheers!

Go-kigen ikaga desu ka.
O-kagesama de.

Genki?
Genki yo.

O-hisashiburi desu ne⁵.

O-hisashiburi desu ne.

Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu
(gozaimashita).

Dō itashimashite.

Arigatō gozaimasu
(gozaimashita).
Kochira koso.

Dōmo.
Iē.

Gomen nasai.
Ii desu.

Hai, dōzo.
Arigatō gozaimasu.

O-saki e dōzo.
Sumimasen.

O-hairi kudasai⁶.
O-jama shimasu⁷.

Itte kimasu.
Itte (i)rasshai⁸.

Tadaima⁹.
O-kaeri nasai.

Gomen kudasai¹⁰.
Hai, chotto matte kudasai.

Kanpai!
Kanpai!

Notes:

- 1 -san may be added to family names to mean Mr, Mrs, Miss or Ms. It is also added, as here, to first names to show some respect. It is **never** used of oneself (see the first conversation). N.B. Often, as here, girls' names end in -ko.
- 2 Male and female teachers (of anything) and, for example, doctors will be addressed as **sensei**. Sensei is also attached to family names and sometimes first names (e.g. Tanaka-sensei; Jon-sensei) when addressing or referring to a teacher.
- 3 -kun is added to boys' first and family names by superiors as a sign of affection.
- 4 Dōzo yoroshiku is really untranslatable. It is a word used to request favourable consideration from another person (see Chapter 2, Conversations 2a and 2b).
- 5 This is a much more informal version of the previous greeting.
- 6 Alternatively, 'I haven't seen you for ages!'
- 7 O-hairi kudasai is used for 'come into a room or a Western style house'. 'Come into a Japanese house' is usually O-agari kudasai.
- 8 O-jama shimasu means literally I'm going to make a nuisance of myself'.
- 9 A family member (or guest) will say Itte kimasu either in the morning when he/she goes off to work or when he/she leaves the house to go shopping, etc. Itte (ir)rashai is the stock response of anyone left in the house.
- 10 Tadaima is what the same person will say upon returning from work or shopping, and O-kaeri nasai is the stock reply.
- 11 Gomen kudasai would, for example, be said by a customer on entering a shop when there appears to be no shop assistant.

Chapter 2

MAIN POINTS:

Statements – A is/isn't B; questions – is/isn't A, B?; answering questions; possession.

CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Introductions; (b) Are you American?
- (c) A business meeting.

1 Nouns

Japanese nouns do not have masculine, feminine or neuter forms, nor do they have singular or plural forms. Also, in Japanese there are no direct equivalents of *a*, *an*, *some* or *the*. So, 'a bullet train', 'the bullet train', 'bullet trains', 'some bullet trains' and 'the bullet trains' are all translated by *shinkansen*. The context in which this is placed – the rest of the sentence – will usually make clear if it is singular or plural.

2 'I, you, he, she,' etc.

These words (pronouns) are used in Japanese much less frequently than in English, since the context is relied upon to make clear who or what is being referred to. The most common pronouns are the following:

I, me	watashi
you (sing.)	anata
he, him	kare
she, her	kanojo
we, us	watashi-tachi
you (pl.)	anata-tachi
they	ano hito-tachi

The words 'this' and 'that' serve for 'it':

this or it	kore
that or it (near speaker and not far from hearer)	sore
that or it (near neither speaker nor hearer)	are

Learn also the following words:

here (this place)	koko or kochira
there (near speaker and not far from hearer)	soko or sochira
there (near neither speaker nor hearer)	asoko or achira

3 The particle *wa*

The particle *wa* is a most important element of basic grammar. When placed after a word and said with rising intonation *A wa* means, in a very broad sense, 'What about *A*?' (Where is *A*? Will *A* do? What happened to *A*? etc.)

Study the following:

What about me?	Watashi wa?
What about here?	Koko wa?
What about this?	Kore wa?
What about there?	Asoko wa?
What about the bullet train?	Shinkansen wa?
What about the beer?	Biru wa?

The particle *wa*, whose literal meaning is 'as for', may also denote the subject and is needed to compose the basic sentence pattern '*A* is *B*'.

4 Verbs (i)

'*A* is/is not *B*' is *A wa B desu/ja arimasen*; literally this translates as 'As for *A*, it is/is not *B*'. *De wa arimasen* (or, more colloquially, *ja arimasen*) is the negative of *desu*.

*That's the bullet train (J: As
for that, it's the bullet train).*

*I'm not American (J: As
for me ...).*

He's a businessman.

They're not students.

Are wa shinkansen desu.

*Watashi wa Amerikajin ja
arimasen.*

Kare wa sarariman desu.

*Ano hito-tachi wa gakusei ja
arimasen.*

When the context makes clear who or what the subject is, then it (and the following *wa*) are very often omitted:

She's Korean. *Kankokujin desu.*

Watch out for the many examples hereafter in which the subject is left unexpressed.

Note that main verbs come at the end of a sentence. They have no 1st, 2nd or 3rd person forms, and no singular or plural forms: '(I) am ...', '(You) are ...', '(He/she/it) is ...', '(We) are ...' and so on are translated by the one word *desu* (*be*).

5 Questions

Questions are formed by placing the question particle *ka* after the verb. 'Is *A*, *B*?' and 'Isn't *A*, *B*?' are *A wa B desu ka* and *A wa B ja arimasen ka*, respectively.

Is that the bullet train? (J: As for that, is it the ...?)

Isn't she Japanese?

Are wa shinkansen desu ka.

**Kanojo wa Nihonjin ja
arimasen ka.**

Note the effect of putting two questions together:

Is this Kobe or (is it) Osaka?

**Koko wa Kōbe desu ka
Ōsaka desu ka.**

*Is she Korean or (is she)
Chinese?*

**Kanojo wa Kankokujin
desu ka Chūgokujin
desu ka.**

6 Answering questions

'That's right', 'that's so', 'I agree' is *sō desu*; 'that's not so', 'that's wrong', 'I disagree' is *chigaimasu*:

A: Is she Korean?

**Kanojo wa Kankokujin
desu ka.**

*B: Yes, that's right.
She's Korean.*

**Hai, sō desu. Kankokujin
desu.**

A: Is he Japanese?

Kare wa Nihonjin desu ka.

B: No, he's not. He's Chinese.

**Ie, chigaimasu. Chūgokujin
desu.**

'I'm not sure' is *chotto wakarimasen*:

A: Is she Japanese or Chinese?

**Kanojo wa Nihonjin desu
ka Chūgokujin desu ka.**

B: I'm not sure.

Chotto wakarimasen.

'Umm ...' is *sō desu ne*, or *etto*:

A: Is that the bullet train?

Are wa shinkansen desu ka.

B: Umm, I'm not sure.

**Sō desu ne. Chotto
wakarimasen.**

Note the use of *sō desu ka* (lit. 'is that so?'):

A: She's a housewife.

B: Oh, is she?

A: He isn't a businessman.

B: Oh, isn't he?

Kanojo wa shufu desu.

A, sō desu ka.

**Kare wa sararīman ja
arimasen.**

A, sō desu ka.

Exercise 1

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I'm not a student. What about you?
- 2 'Is that the bullet train?' 'No, it's not.'
- 3 'Is she Japanese or Chinese?' 'Umm ...'
- 4 'This is my wife.' 'Pleased to meet you.'
- 5 'She's Korean.' 'Oh, is she?'

7 'You know', 'Isn't it?'

Yo after the main verb adds emphasis, often with the force of 'you know':

*A: This isn't the Dai Ichi
hotel, you know.*

B: Oh, isn't it?

A: This is the Hilton.

B: Oh, is it?

**Koko wa Dai Ichi hoteru ja
arimasen yo.**

E, sō desu ka.

Koko wa Hiruton desu yo.

A, sō desu ka.

Ne after the main verb is similar to the French 'n'est-ce pas?', so:

- A: That's the bullet train, isn't it?
Are wa shinkansen desu ne.
- B: That's right.
Sō desu yo.
- A: He isn't Japanese, is he?
Kare wa Nihonjin ja arimasen ne.
- B: No, he isn't.
Hai, sō desu yo*.

* Be careful! The Japanese use 'Yes' (Hai) to mean 'What you say is correct'.

8 Possessives – the particle *no* (i)

No is a particle indicating possession in a very broad sense. B no A can mean, for example, 'B's A', 'A of B', 'A which is B', 'A who is B', 'A which is from B', 'A which is in B'. Study these examples:

- Tokyo is Japan's capital.
Tōkyō wa Nihon no shuto desu.
- This is a map of Tokyo, isn't it?
Kore wa Tōkyō no chizu desu ne.
- This is Chieko (who is) my wife.
Kanai no Chieko desu.
- What about the car (which is) over there?
Asoko no kuruma wa?
- This is Mr Tanaka (who is) from Mitsui.
Mitsui no Tanaka-san desu.
- What about the cost of living in Japan?
Nihon no bukka wa?

'My', 'your', 'his', 'her', 'our' and 'their' are expressed by the relevant pronoun followed by no:

- It's my money.
(Sore wa) watashi no o-kane desu yo.
- That's his house, isn't it?
(Are wa) kare no ie desu ne.

'Mine' or 'my one', 'yours' or 'your one', 'his' or 'his one', 'hers' or 'her one' and so forth are expressed by the pronoun plus no alone, as in:

- What about mine?
Watashi no wa?
- What about the one over there?
Asoko no wa?
- That isn't Mr Tanaka's, you know.
Are wa Tanaka-san no ja arimasen yo.

No turns certain nouns, and some colours, into adjectives. For example:

- | | |
|---------|---------------|
| real | hontō no |
| present | ima no |
| brown | cha-iro no |
| yellow | ki-iro no |
| green | midori-iro no |
- Is this real coffee?
Hontō no kōhī desu ka.
- A: Is yours the brown bag?
Anata no wa cha-iro no kabani desu ka.
- B: Yes, my bag is brown.
Hai, watashi no kabani wa cha-iro desu*.

* No is only used with these adjectives when they come before a noun.

Exercise 2

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'That's real coffee, isn't it?' 'No, it's instant.'
- 2 'Is the yellow car yours?' 'No, it's not. My car is green.'
- 3 'What about some coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
- 4 'That person over there isn't Japanese.'
- 5 'This isn't today's paper, you know.'

CONVERSATION 2A

Introductions

At the airport, Mr Brown (B) introduces to his wife Chieko (C) and his son David (D) his friend Professor Emura (E):

- B: Chieko, kochira' wa Tōkyō Daigaku no Emura-sensei desu. Emura-sensei, kanai no Chieko desu.
- C: Hajimemashite. Dōzo yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.
- B: Kanai wa Eigo no sensei desu.
- E: A, sō desu ka. Dōzo yoroshiku.
- B: Sensei, kore' wa musuko no Dēbiddo desu. Dēbiddo wa shōgakusei desu.
- E: A, sō desu ka. Hajimemashite.
- D: Hajimemashite.

CONVERSATION 2B

Are you American?

A young Japanese businessman (A) starts a conversation with a foreign student (B):

- A: Sumimasen, Amerikajin desu ka^{2,3}.
- B: Īe, chigaimasu. Igirisujin desu.
- A: A, sō desu ka. Gakusei desu ka.
- B: Hai, sō desu. Rondon daigaku no Nihon gakubu no gakusei desu.
- A: Naruhodo⁴. Watashi wa kaishain desu yo. Shitsurei desu ga⁵, o-namae⁶ wa?
- B: Maiku desu.
- A: Ya, Maiku-san desu ka. Watashi wa Kunio desu. Satō Kunio⁷. Dōzo yoroshiku.
- B: Dōzo yoroshiku.

CONVERSATION 2C

A meeting

Mr Brown (B) has arranged to meet a Mr Ikeda (I) from the Mitsui company in the lobby of the Dai Ichi hotel in Tokyo. He first inquires of a passer-by (P) if he's at the right hotel:

- B: Sumimasen. Koko wa Dai Ichi hoteru desu ka.
- P: Īe, chigaimasu yo. Dai Ichi wa asoko no hoteru desu yo.
- B: A, asoko desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.
- P: Dō itashimashite.

Mr Brown enters the lobby of the hotel:

- I: Shitsurei desu ga, ICI (ai-shi-ai) no Buraun-san de irasshaimasu⁸ ka.
- B: Hai, sō desu.
- I: Hajimemashite. Mitsui no Ikeda to mōshimasu. Dōzo yoroshiku.
- B: Dōzo yoroshiku.
- I: Watashi no meishi desu.
- B: A, dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Watashi no mo⁹ dōzo.

Notes:

1. *kochira wa, kore wa*: *kochira wa* is more respectful than *kore*, hence the former is used for Prof. Emura and the latter for members of Brown's family.
2. *Amerikajin desu ka*: the Japanese tend to avoid using the pronoun 'you' as much as possible. (The context makes clear who is being referred to here.)
3. *Amerikajin*: -jin placed after the name of a country gives a national of that country ... *America, Amerika; an American, Amerikajin. England, Igirisu; an English person, Igirisujin. Japan, Nihon; a Japanese, Nihonjin.*
4. *Naruhodo: I see.*
5. *shitsurei desu ga*: 'Excuse me for asking but ...'
6. *O-namae*: (lit. 'What about your name?'); the *o-* is honorific. *O-* may be attached to certain nouns out of respect for the listener. *O-* is also attached to certain nouns as a matter of course with no particular respect involved; e.g. *o-mizu* – drinking water; *o-tearai* – the toilet; *o-cha* – (Japanese) tea.
7. *Satō Kunio*: In Japan, family names come first and first names second.
8. *de irasshaimasu*: the 'honorific' equivalent of *desu*; it is never used of oneself, only of others to whom one wishes to show respect for whatever reason (e.g. strangers of similar or superior status; acquaintances of superior status).
9. *watashi no mo*: 'There's mine too'. Consider the following:
He's a businessman too. *Kare mo sarariman desu.*
Both he and she are students. *Kare mo kanojo mo gakusei desu.*

And in the negative:

Neither he nor I are businessmen. *Kare mo watashi mo sarariman ja arimasen.*

In order to consider this and later chapters completed, you should now go over all the examples once again, covering up one side at a time, to ensure you can translate confidently into and from both languages.

Chapter 3

MAIN POINTS:

Questions – Who/where/what etc. is A?; locational expressions – A is in front of/behind etc. B; some particles – to, from, with, etc.

CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Asking for someone;
- (b) 'Where are we?'
- (c) A chance meeting.

9 'Who', 'where', 'what', 'when', etc.

Learn the following:

who?	dare (or dochira-sama in more polite speech)
where?	doko (or dochira)
what?	nani (but often nan before syllables of rows 6, 7 and 8 in the table on page 9)
which one (= of two)?	dochira
which one (= of three and more)?	dore
when?	itsu
what's ... like?	dō
how about?	dō (or ikaga in more polite speech)

'Who is A?' is *A wa dare desu ka* (literally: 'As for *A*, who is it?'). Study the following examples, noting those where the subject is not expressed:

- A: Who is she? (J: as for her, who is she?) Kanojo wa dare desu ka.
B: She's a singer. Kashu desu.
- A: Who are you? Dochira-sama de irasshaimasu ka.
B: I'm Tanaka from Mitsui. Mitsui no Tanaka desu.
- A: Excuse me, where is the exit? Sumimasen, deguchi wa doko desu ka.
B: It's over there. Asoko desu.
- A: Where is the toilet? O-tearai wa dochira desu ka.
B: It's that way. Achira desu.
- A: What is that? Sore wa nan desu ka.
B: This is an alien registration card. Kore wa gaijin torōkushō desu.
- A: Which one (of the two) is his? Kare no wa dochira desu ka.
B: His is that one over there. Kare no wa achira no desu yo.
- A: Which (of three or more) is yours, Yumiko? Yumiko-san no wa dore desu ka.
B: That one. Are desu.
- A: When is the baseball match? Yakyū no shiai wa itsu desu ka.
B: It's tomorrow. Ashita desu.
- A: What's today's weather like? Kyō no tenki wa dō desu ka.
B: It's all right. Māmā desu.
- A: How about tomorrow? Ashita wa dō desu ka.
B: Tomorrow's no good. Ashita wa dame desu.
- A: How about some tea? O-cha wa ikaga desu ka.
B: Yes, please. O-negai shimasu.

10 Possessives – the particle *no* (ii)

No may be used with *dare*, *doko*, *nan* and *itsu*:

- A: Whose money is it? Dare no o-kane desu ka.
B: It's mine. Watashi no desu.
- A: Where's he from (J: a person of where)? Doko no hito desu ka.
B: He's from America. Amerika no hito desu.
- A: What's the book about (J: a book of what)? Nan no hon desu ka.
B: It's about karate. Karate no hon desu.
- A: Which newspaper is it (J: a newspaper of when)? Itsu no shinbun desu ka.
B: It's today's. Kyō no desu.

11 'This', 'that', 'which', etc.

The adjectives 'this', 'this sort of', 'what', 'what sort of' are:

this	kono
that (= near speaker and hearer)	sono
that (= not near speaker or hearer)	ano
which, what	dono
this sort of	konna
that sort of	sonna
that sort of	anna
which/what sort of	donna

Consider the examples below:

A: That car is a Toyota.

Ano kuruma wa Toyota
desu yo.

B: Which car do you mean?
(lit. 'is it?')

Dono kuruma desu ka.

A: That brown car.

Ano chairo no kuruma
desu.

B: Oh is it?

A, sō desu ka.

A: What sort of person is he?

Donna hito desu ka.

B: He's an ordinary person.

Futsū no hito desu yo.

12 'In front of', 'behind', etc.

Note the following locational words:

front (= in front of)

mae

before (= this side of)

temae

back (= behind)

ushiro

inside

naka

outside

soto

top (= on top of)

ue

bottom (= under)

shita

near

chikaku

beside

tonari

beyond

mukō

opposite

mukai

The particle **no** is used to join these words to others.

Note the word order:

in front of the coffee shop

kissaten no mae

behind the door

doa no ushiro

this side of the department store

depāto no temae

beyond the police office

kōban no mukō

beside the station

eki no tonari

under the chair

isu no shita

on (top of) the table

tēburu no ue

Consider the 'expanded' examples below:

the coffee shop in front of the

station

the person behind the door

eki no mae no kissaten

doa no ushiro no hito

Locational words may fit into the basic **A wa B desu (de wa arimasen)** structure:

*The coffee shop is (:) as for the
coffee shop, it is) in front of
the station.*

Kissaten wa eki no mae
desu.

The police office is beside the bar. Kōban wa sunakku no
tonari desu.

Locational words followed by **no** act as adjectives:

the person in front

mae no hito

the back door

ushiro no doa

the top drawer

ue no hikidashi

the shop opposite

mukai no o-mise

Exercise 3

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Who is the man over there?' '(Do you mean) the man in front of the window?'
- 2 Is this paper today's or yesterday's?
- 3 'Excuse me, but where is the toilet?' 'It's over there.'
- 4 'What's that?' 'That's my ticket, you know.'
- 5 'What's the sashimi-like?' 'It's all right.'

13 Verbs: plain and polite

All verbs have a plain form (the form found in a dictionary) and also a polite form. In every case except one the latter ends in **masu**, and is usually called the **masu** form. In the vocabularies, verbs are given in both forms: e.g. **suru**/**shimasu** ('do'). The difference is one of politeness alone. **Shimasu** is more polite than the plain **suru**. Consequently, the **masu** form is taught throughout most of this book, and you are advised to stick to the **masu** form yourself.

The one verb which has no **masu** form is **desu** ('be'). **Desu**, however, corresponds in politeness to a **masu** form. **Da** is its plain form.

14 'Be' – *Aru/arimasu, iru/imasu*

Aru/arimasu and **iru/imasu** mean 'be' (not in the sense of 'A equals B', for which **da/desu** is used). These verbs mean 'be (in a place)', '(there) is/are', 'exist'. For inanimate subjects, **aru/arimasu** is used, and for animate subjects **iru/imasu** is generally used.

The negative of **masu** is **masen**. Consider carefully the following:

A: Is there (have you got) any coffee?
B: Yes there is (I have).

A: Haven't you got the passports?
B: (No) I haven't.

A: Yumiko isn't here.
B: Isn't she?

Kōhī wa arimasu ka.
Hai, arimasu yo.

Pasupōto wa arimasen ka.
Arimasen.

Yumiko wa imasen yo.
Sō desu ka.

The future is also translated by the plain **masu** form:

A: Will you be in tomorrow, Kunio?
B: No, I shan't.

Kunio-san, ashita imasu ka.
Imasen yo.

15 'Be' – *Irassharu/irasshaimasu, oru/orimasu*

Two other verbs for 'be (in a place)' are needed:

- (a) **Irassharu/irasshaimasu** is an 'honorific' verb, one used to exalt the position of its subject. It is never used of oneself, nor when referring to members of one's family or intimates. It would be used, for example, to address someone of superior status, or someone of similar status to whom, for whatever reason, one wished to show respect. It may also be used when referring to someone of superior status or someone of similar status to whom one wished to show respect.
- (b) **Oru/orimasu** is a humble verb, used to lower the status of the speaker, his family and those associated with him out of deference for others.

Study carefully the examples below, taking particular note that (i) Mr Murata is visiting Mr Habu (who works for a travel agent) and (ii) Professor Tanaka is a colleague of Professor Inoue:

Mr Murata: Is Mr Habu in?
Habu's colleague: Yes, he is.

Student: Is Professor Tanaka in?
Professor Inoue: He's not in now.

Student: Tanaka-sensei!
Are you there?
Professor Tanaka: Yes, I'm here.

Habu-san wa
irasshaimasu ka.
Hai, orimasu.

Tanaka-sensei wa
irasshaimasu ka.
Ima imasen.

Tanaka-sensei!
Irasshaimasu ka.
Hai, orimasu yo.

If two students are talking together, then they are unlikely to use 'honorifics' when referring to the Professor, and may well use the plain *iru*:

Student: *Is Prof Tanaka in?* Tanaka-sensei *iru*?

Student: Yes, he's in. Iru yo.

N.B. There is a good deal of flexibility in these honorific forms. They are by no means used consistently, and the forms given above are intended as a guide only.

16 'In', 'of', 'to': the particle *ni*

Location is commonly expressed by the particle *ni* ('in') plus *aru/arimasu, iru/imasu* (or one of its other forms):

A: Where (J: in where) is the professor?

B: He's in his room.

A: Where's the dictionary?

B: Isn't it on the table?

Sensei wa dochira ni
irasshaimasu ka.

Heya ni irasshaimasu yo.

Jisho wa doko ni arimasu
ka.

Tēburu no ue ni arimasen
ka.

'To' and 'towards' (always expressed in Japanese) are also translated by *ni*, or by *e*:

A: Where (J: to where) are you going?

B: I'm going to the shops.

A: Are you going home?

B: No, I'm going to a friend's place.

Doko ni (e) ikimasu ka.

O-mise ni (e) ikimasu.

Uchi ni (e) kaerimasu ka.

Ie, tomodachi no tokoro ni
(e) ikimasu.

17 'From' and some other particles

Note that word order is fairly free in Japanese. As a rule the item followed by *wa* comes first.

'From' is *kara*. It can be used of place or time:

I'll walk from the station.

The holidays start from today.

Eki kara arukimasu.

Yasumi wa kyō kara
hajimarimasu.

In 'from A to (until) B' the 'to' or 'until' is made:

I walk from the station to
the office.

She'll be at home from morning
until evening.

Eki kara kaisha made
arukimasu.

Kanojo wa asa kara ban
made uchi ni imasu.

'In' or 'at', in the sense of 'performing an action in/at (a place)' is *de* (ni only being used for 'static' verbs such as 'be', 'stand', 'sit', 'live'):

A: Where will you wait?

B: I'll wait in front of the exit.

Doko de machimasu ka.

Deguchi no mae de
machimasu.

'On, by (a train)', 'with (chopsticks)', 'in (English)' are also translated by *de*:

I go by bus to work.

I'll eat with chopsticks too.

I'll speak in English.

Basu de kaisha e ikimasu.

Watashi mo hashi de
tabemasu yo.

Eigo de hanashimasu.

All particles, such as *kara*, *made*, *de* and *ni*, can be followed by *wa* or *mo*. With *wa*, a contrast is often implied, as in:

In Tokyo there aren't any (but, e.g., there are in Kyoto)

I won't go by bus (but, e.g., by bike)

Tōkyō ni wa arimasen.

Basu de wa ikimasen.

Followed by *mo*, the meaning may be '... both ... and ...', or in the negative '... neither ... nor ...':

Guests are coming from both Korea and Hong Kong.

He won't tell either me or you, will he?

O-kyaku-san wa Kankoku kara mo Honkon kara mo kimasu.

Watashi ni mo anata ni mo iimasen ne.

Exercise 4

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Have you got any coffee?
- 2 Will you go by bus to the airport?
- 3 The passports are over there.
- 4 I'm going to speak in Japanese.
- 5 Mr Ikeda will not be in tomorrow.

CONVERSATION 3A

Asking for someone

Mr Brown (B) goes to the travel agent's and speaks to a colleague (C) of Tanaka's:

B: Sumimasen. Buraun to mōshimasu ga¹, Tanaka-san wa irasshaimasu ka.

C: Tanaka wa ima orimasen¹ ga ...

B: So desu ka. Sore de wa, nochī hodo ukagaimasu¹.

CONVERSATION 3B

'Where are we?'

Mr Brown (B) is on a subway train stopped at a station; he talks to another passenger (X):

B: Sumimasen. Koko wa doko desu ka. Shinjuku desu ka.

X: Īe, Shinjuku ja arimasen yo. Etto, Shibuya desu.

B: Sō desu ka. Shinjuku made ikimasu ka.

X: Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Hai, Shinjuku ni ikimasu yo.

B: Kono tsugi¹ desu ka.

X: Chigaimasu. Tsugi no tsugi desu.

B: Dōmo arigatō.

CONVERSATION 3C

A chance meeting

Mr Brown (B) bumps into Mr Katayama (K), whom he hasn't seen for a while:

B: Katayama-san, konnichi wa!

K: Buraun-san desu ka. O-hisashiburi desu ne. O-genki desu ka.

B: O-kage-sama de genki desu. Katayama-san wa?

K: Genki desu.

B: Dō desu ka¹, Katayama-san. O-cha demo¹ nomimasesen ka¹.

K: Sō desu ne¹. Nomi ni¹ ikimashō¹. Etto, eki no tonari no kissaten wa dō desu ka.

B: Kadota desu ne. Asoko ni shimashō¹.

K: Kuruma¹² de ikimasu ka soretomo¹³ arukimasu ka.

B: Arukimashō.

Chapter 4

Notes:

1. **ga**: a conjunction meaning 'but', but often (as here) it has no adversative force at all. See Chapter 4.
2. **orimasu**: the humble verb is used by the speaker, who is humbling himself and Tanaka out of respect for the customer, Mr Brown.
3. **ukagaimasu**: **ukagau/ukagaimasu** is a humble verb meaning here 'visit'.
4. **kono tsugi**: 'the one after this'.
5. **dō desu ka**: 'how about it?'
6. **o-cha demo**: 'tea or something similar'.
7. **nomimasen ka**: 'would(n't) you like to drink?'
8. **sō desu ne**: depending on the intonation **sō desu ne** can be either a positive-sounding 'umm' as here, or a negative-sounding one.
9. **nomi ni**: remove **masu** from any verb, add **ni** and the verb **iku/ikimasu** (go) or **kuru/kimasu** (come) to make 'go/come and do'.
10. **ikimashō**: change **masu** to **mashō** to make 'Let's ...', add **ka** to make 'Shall I/we ...'. Consider the following:
 A: Let's go to a pub. Pabu ni ikimashō.
 B: Yes, let's. Ikimashō.
 A: Shall we eat in that coffee shop?
 B: Yes, let's (j: Let's do so). Ano kissaten de tabemashō ka.
 B: Yes, let's (j: Let's do so). Sō shimashō.
11. **ni shimashō**: 'Let's decide/settle on ...', 'let's make it ...'
12. **kuruma**: here, the word for 'car' is used to mean 'taxi'.
13. **soretomo**: 'or'.

MAIN POINTS:

Verbs and their subjects (**wa** and **ga**); verbs and their objects (**wa**, **o** and **ni**); the past tense.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) In a coffee shop; (b) In a taxi.

18 Verbs and their subjects ... The differences between **wa** and **ga**

The subject of a verb is followed by the particle **ga**:

A book is (there is a book) on the table.

Mr Brown uses chopsticks.

Tēburu no ue ni hon ga arimasu.

Buraun-san ga hashi o tsukaimasu.

As you know, **wa** can also follow a word which is the subject of the sentence, so something must be said on the difference between the two particles.

Ga often implies that the word it follows is new to the conversation, so it often corresponds to the English 'a (book)', 'some (books)' as opposed to 'the (book which you're reading)'; **ga** emphasizes the word it follows, rather than the rest of the sentence; **ga** and only **ga** is used after question words (e.g. **dare ga ...**; **doko ga ...**); in reply to such sentences, **ga** and only **ga** is used (e.g. **watashi ga ...**; **asoko ga ...**).

Wa follows what is the general topic of the sentence ('the topic' may in fact be the object or some other part of speech, and not exclusively the subject), and A wa has the meaning of 'as for A, the following is important', or 'we're discussing A, this is what I want to say about it/him etc.'; wa is also used to provide a contrast, so A wa can mean 'A (in contrast to others), ...'; wa is generally used more in negative sentences.

Study the following and then refer back to the explanation:

A: There is a passport on the table.

Tēburu no ue ni
pasupōto ga arimasu.

B: The passport is on the table.

Pasupōto wa* tēburu no ue
ni arimasu.

A: There's a coffee shop over there.

Asoko ni kissaten ga
arimasu.

B: The coffee shop is over there.

Kissaten wa* asoko ni
arimasu.

(* Note again that the item followed by wa generally comes first in the sentence.)

A: I'm going.

Watashi ga ikimasu.
(in answer to 'Who's going?')

B: I'm going.

Watashi wa ikimasu.
(in answer to 'What about you?')

A: He's coming.

Kare ga kimasu.
(in answer to 'Who's coming?')

B: He's coming.

Kare wa kimasu.
(in answer to 'What about him?')

A: I'm going but my wife isn't.

Watashi wa ikimasu ga kanai wa
ikimasen.

B: He's a teacher, but she isn't.

Kare wa sensei desu ga kanojo wa
chigaimasu.

19 Verbs and their objects (i)

Direct objects of verbs are followed by the particle o:

I'm going to watch the television. Terebi o mimasu.

Let's have a(n alcoholic) drink. O-sake o nomimashō.

Where the object is a question word such as nani or dare, it too will be followed by o (NEVER by wa):

A: What do the Japanese eat for breakfast? Nihonjin wa asa-gohan ni
nani o tabemasu ka.

B: They eat toast. Tōsuto o tabemasu.

A: Who(m) are you going to invite? Dare o yobimasu ka.

B: Let's invite Professor Tanaka. Tanaka-sensei o yobimashō.

The emphasis here is on the word followed by o.

Sometimes mo and wa are more appropriate for the direct object. Mo ('also', 'both ... and ...' or 'even') will replace o in sentences such as the following:

Today I'm going to eat both sashimi and natto.

He doesn't even eat rice.

Kyō wa sashimi mo nattō
mo tabemasu.

Kare wa gohan mo
tabemasen.

Wa will often replace o in negative sentences:

I shan't buy the Mainichi
(newspaper).

Aren't you going to watch the news?

Mainichi wa kaimasen.

Nyūsu wa mimasen ka.

when making a contrast:

I'll buy the paper, but I won't get the bread.

Shinbun wa kaimasu ga
pan wa kaimasen.

in answer to a question containing *wa*:

A: What about the Ryoanji temple? Ryōanji wa mimasu ka.

Are you going to see that?

B: Yes, I'm going to see the
Ryoanji.

Hai, Ryōanji wa
mimasu.

Finally, note that in less formal conversation *wa*, *ga* and *o* are all very frequently dropped!

20 Verbs and their objects (ii)

Some verbs take the object particle *o*, where English may require 'over', 'along', 'around' or 'at' or nothing at all. Consider:

Let's cross (over) the road at
the traffic lights. Shingō de michi o
watarimashō.

We'll go straight along this road. Kono michi o massugu
ikimasu yo.

Let's turn (to the) left at
(round) this corner. Kono kado o hidari e
magarimashō.

'... please', ... *kudasai* or, more politely, *o-negai shimasu*, 'Here you are, here's ...', *dōzo*, and 'Thank you for ...', *arigatō gozaimasu*, require *o*:

(May I have) the Mainichi,
please. Mainichi o kudasai.

A coffee, please. Kōhī o o-negai shimasu.

Here's your coffee. Kōhī o dōzo.

Thank you for the flowers. Hana o arigatō gozaimasu.

21 Verbs and their objects (iii)

The indirect objects of verbs must be followed by *ni*:

I'll phone him (j: to him).

Are you going to write a
letter to your teacher?

Kare ni denwa o kakemasu.

Sensei ni tegami o
kakimasu ka.

Exercise 5

Put into Japanese:

- There is some money in my purse.
- 'The money is not in the drawer.' 'Where is it?'
- 'He speaks both Japanese and Chinese.' 'Does he?'
- 'Who's going to post the letter?' 'I'll post it.'
- I shan't go today. I'll go tomorrow.

22 'And', 'or', 'with'

When 'and' joins nouns, *to* may be used:

My wife and I are having a party. Watashi to kanai (to) ga pātei* o hirakimasu.
A hamburger and chips please. Hanbāgā to furaido poteto o o-negai shimasu.

*Pronounce as in English 'party'.

Ya conveys the idea of 'A and B amongst other things':

We bought wine and beer and
cola (amongst other things). Wain ya bīru ya kōra o kaimashita.

Equally common is ... *toka* ... *toka* ... *nado*. The *nado* may correspond to 'etcetera', 'and all sorts of things':

There are books and newspapers
and letters and all sorts
of things on the floor. Yuka no ue ni hon toka
shinbun toka tegami nado
ga arimasu.

With just one item either *toka* or *nado* may be used:

There were magazines (and things).

Zasshi *toka* arimashita.
or Zasshi *nado* arimashita.

'Or' is *ka* or *mata wa*:

The Japanese eat (either) rice or toast for breakfast.

Nihonjin *wa gohan mata wa tōsuto o chōshoku ni tabemasu.*

'With' is *to*, and sometimes *to issho ni*:

I'll go with him.
Who are you going with?

Kare *to ikimasu.*
Dare *to (issho ni) ikimasu ka.*

Note how you say the following:

Let's do it together.
Are you coming (with us)?

Issho *ni shimashō.*
Issho *ni kimasu ka.*

23 'But', 'and'

'But' may be *ga* or *keredomo*:

Excuse me, but where is the toilet?

Sumimasen *ga o-tearai wa dochira desu ka.*

I'm not going tomorrow but what about you (are you

Watashi *wa ashita ikimasen ga anata wa?*

The passport is mine but the wallet isn't.

Pasupōto *wa watashi no desu ga saifu wa watashi no ja arimasen.*

Ga often ends a sentence, indicating hesitation:

A: Have you got any tea?
B: We have (why, would you like some? etc.).

O-cha *wa arimasu ka.*
Arimasu *ga ...*

A: Are you Mr Tanaka?

Tanaka-san *de irasshaimasu ka.*

B: Yes, I'm Tanaka (why do you ask?; what do you want? etc.).

Hai, Tanaka *desu ga ...*

'And (then)' can be expressed by *sore kara* (or *soshite*):

Let's go and see a film and then have a meal.

Eiga *o mi ni ikimashō. Sore kara gohan o tabe ni ikimashō.*

24 The past tense (i)

The past tense of *desu* is *deshita*:

A: Who was it?
B: It was Mr Ikeda.

Dare *deshita ka.*
Ikeda-san *deshita yo.*

A: What was the film like?
B: It was all right.

Eiga *wa dō deshita ka.*
Māmā *deshita.*

The past tense of verbs ending in *masu* is *mashita*:

A: Who came last night?
B: I did.

Yūbe *dare ga kimashita ka.*
Watashi *desu.*

The past negative of *desu* is formed by adding *deshita* to *de wa (ja) arimasen*:

It wasn't me.

Watashi *ja arimasen deshita.*

Wasn't it her?

Kanojo *ja arimasen deshita ka.*

The past negative of other verbs is made by adding *deshita* to *masen*:

I didn't read yesterday's paper.

Kinō *no shinbun wa yomimasesen deshita.*

Didn't you eat the sushi?

Sushi *wa tabemasen deshita ka.*

N.B. The perfect tense, e.g. 'Have you (finished?)', 'I've (eaten)', etc., may also be expressed by the *mashita* form:

A: Have you finished?
B: Yes, I have.

Owarimashita *ka.*
Hai, owarimashita.

A: I've eaten.
B: Have you?

Tabemashita.
Sō *desu ka.*

The negative past (*masen deshita*), however, is not used for the negative perfect (i.e. 'have not done', etc.). The entirely different construction required for this will be introduced in Chapter 8.

25 'Now', 'already', 'not yet' – *Ima*, *mō*, *mada*

Ima, *mō* and *mada* are three adverbs easily confused. *Ima* is used for 'now' with a verb in the *masu* or *mashō* form, and 'just now' with a verb in the past tense:

I'm going out now.

Let's eat now.

There was a phone call just now. *Ima denwa ga arimashita.*

Ima dekakemasu yo.

Ima tabemashō.

Mō means both 'already' and 'now':

Are you going to bed already (now)? *Mō nemasu ka.*

Have you finished already (now)? *Mō owarimashita ka.*

Mada with a negative means 'not yet':

It won't be finished yet. *Mada owarimasen.*
We're not going out yet. *Mada dekakemasen yo.*

Mada desu alone is very commonly used to mean 'not yet':

A: Have you read it yet? *Mō yomimashita ka.*
B: Not yet. *Mada desu.*

Sugu (ni), 'immediately', 'straight away', combines with *ima* to give 'at this very moment'; and with *mō* to give 'soon', 'in a minute':

I can't do it at this very moment. *Ima sugu dekimasen.*
We'll be having dinner in a minute. *Mō sugu gohan o tabemasu yo.*

Exercise 6

Put into Japanese:

- 1 We didn't go out for a drink last night.
- 2 She went straight home.
- 3 I didn't eat the sashimi.
- 4 The soya sauce and the sashimi are over there.
- 5 I'll finish in a minute.
- 6 A hamburger and a coffee, please.
- 7 Didn't you speak to her in Japanese?

CONVERSATION 4A

In a coffee shop

Mr Brown (B) orders breakfast from the waitress (W):

W: Irasshaimase¹.

(She brings water and a hot towel to Mr Brown, who takes a seat)

W: Nani ni itashimashō² ka.

B: Sō desu ne. Kyō no mōningu³ wa nan desu ka.

W: Tamago to tōsuto de gozaimasu⁴ ga.

B: Sore ja⁵, mōningu (o)⁶ o-negai shimasu.

W: Kōhī no mōningu de gozaimasu ka. Kōcha no mōningu de gozaimasu ka.

B: Kōhī (o) o-negai shimasu. A, yappari kōcha ni shimasu yo.

W: Miruku-tei⁷ ga yoroshii desu ka?

B: Hai.

W: Sore de wa miruku-tei no mōningu de gozaimasu ne. Kashikomarimashita⁸. Shōshō o-machi-kudasai⁹.

B: Sumimasen. Kyō no shinbun (wa) arimasu ka.

W: Hai, dochira ni gozaimasu¹⁰. Asahi to Mainichi wa gozaimasu ga Eiji-shinbun wa gozaimasen.

W: Miruku-tei no mōningu, o-matase shimashita¹¹.

B: Dōmo.

(Some time later)

B: O-kanjō (o) o-negai shimasu.

W: Hai, kashikomarimashita.

* Pronounce as in English 'tea'.

CONVERSATION 4B

In a taxi

Mr Brown (B) asks a passer-by (P) if there's a taxi rank:

B: Sumimasen. Chikaku ni takushī noriba wa arimasen ka.

P: Takushī noriba desu ka. Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Asoko no depāto no mae no basu tei no chikaku ni arimashita yo.

B: Arigatō.

(He finds a taxi and speaks to the driver (D):

B: Tarumi eki made o-negai shimasu.

D: Eki no dono hen desu ka.

B: Eki-mae o-negai shimasu.

D: Hai, wakarimashita.

(Ten minutes later)

B: Untenshu-san, mō sugu tsukimasu ka.

D: Hai, mō sugu desu yo ... Hai, eki-mae desu.

B: Kono hen de oroshite kudasai¹².

The passenger pays:

B: O-tsuri wa kekkō desu¹³.

D: Āa, dōmo.

Notes:

1. **Irasshaimase:** a stock greeting made by shop assistants, waiters, etc., when one enters shops, cafés, restaurants. No reply is necessary.
2. **itashimashō:** itasu/itashimasu is a humble form of suru/shimasu.
3. **mōningu:** an abbreviation of mōningu sābisu, which is a cheap and light breakfast available at most Japanese coffee shops.
4. **de gozaimasu:** de gozaru/de gozaimasu is a politer, humbler form of da/desu.
5. **sore ja:** an abbreviation of sore de wa, 'well, then'.
6. **(o) o-negai shimasu:** as mentioned in section 19, the object particle o and other particles are frequently omitted in conversation.
7. ... ga yoroshii desu ka: a polite form of ... ga ii desu ka, literally 'is it good?' (for adjectives ending in i, see Chapter 6).
8. **kashikomarimashita:** a polite word meaning 'I have understood'.
9. **shōshō o-machi kudasai:** a politer form of chotto matte kudasai.
10. **gozaimasu:** gozaru/gozaimasu is a politer, humbler form of aru/arimasu.
11. ... o-matase shimashita: 'I'm sorry to have kept you waiting for ...'. A polite expression.
12. **oroshite kudasai:** '(Please) let me off here'.
13. **kekko desu:** here '... is unnecessary'. Tipping is not commonplace in Japan, except in the form of a few coins to a taxi driver.

Chapter 5

MAIN POINTS:

Numbers; time; dates; only; miscellaneous numeral expressions.

CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Birthdays; (b) At the post office;
- (c) At the station ticket office.

26 Numbers (Chinese)

There are two counting systems, both in daily use. One is of Chinese origin, the other Japanese. Chinese numbers can be used alone or in combination with various 'counters'.

Alone, the Chinese numbers will be used for: counting from 1 onwards, without reference to specific concrete objects; in mathematics; and for saying telephone numbers.

Learn the numbers from 0–10, and then from 11–20, noticing how the latter are formed logically, by saying 'ten-one', 'ten-two' and so on up to 'two-ten':

0	rei (zero)		
1	ichi	11	jūichi
2	ni	12	jūni
3	san	13	jūsan
4	shi (yon)	14	jūshi (jūyon)
5	go	15	jūgo
6	roku	16	jūroku
7	shichi (nana)	17	jūshichi (jūnana)
8	hachi	18	jūhachi
9	kyū (ku)	19	jūkyū (jūku)
10	jū	20	nijū

From 20 to 100 there are some irregularities: 40 is *yonjū* (not *shijū*); 70 is *nanajū* (not *shichijū*); 90 is *kyūjū* (not *kujū*).

In the Chinese system, then, there are variants for certain numbers: 4 is either *shi* or *yon* (the latter being, in practice, so much more common that you may use it unless otherwise advised), 7 is *shichi* or *nana*, 9 is *ku* or *kyū*.

100 is *hyaku*, 1,000 is *sen*. Learn the following, and note the phonetic changes in those with an asterisk*:

100	hyaku	1,000	sen
200	nihyaku	2,000	nisen
300	sanbyaku*	3,000	sansen
400	yonhyaku	4,000	yonsen
500	gohyaku	5,000	gosen
600	ropphyaku*	6,000	rokusen
700	nanahyaku	7,000	nanasen
800	happyaku*	8,000	hassen*
900	kyūhyaku	9,000	kyūsen

10,000 is *ichiman*; 100,000 is *jūman* and 1,000,000 is *hyakuman*.

You can now form any number:

28	nijū hachi
376	sanbyaku nanajū roku
5,211	gosen nihyaku jūichi
199,805	jūkyūman kyūsen happyaku go

27 Telling the time

'O'clock' requires the time counter *jī*. Learn the following:

1 o'clock	ichiji	7 o'clock	shichiji
2 o'clock	niji	8 o'clock	hachiji
3 o'clock	sanji	9 o'clock	kuji
4 o'clock	yoji (not yonji)	10 o'clock	jūji
5 o'clock	goji	11 o'clock	jūichiji
6 o'clock	rokuji	12 o'clock	jūniji

'Half past' is expressed by *han* placed after the hour, so that 'half past one' becomes 'one o'clock, half': *ichiji han*. Similarly, 'half past twelve' is *jūniji han*, and so on.

'Minute' is fun, but again there are some phonetic changes evident from the spelling below:

1 minute	ippun
2 minutes	nifun
3 minutes	sampun
4 minutes	yonpun
5 minutes	gofun
6 minutes	roppun
7 minutes	nanafun
8 minutes	hachifun (or happun)
9 minutes	kyūfun
10 minutes	juppun
20 minutes	nijuppun
etc.	

To express minutes past the hour, you must again change the conventional English order:

Three minutes past one	Ichiji sampun.
(J: one o'clock, three minutes).	
A quarter past six	Rokuji jūgofun.
(J: six o'clock, fifteen minutes).	
Nine minutes past nine.	Kuji kyūfun.

Minutes before the hour maintain this same order, with the addition of *mae* ('before'):

Five minutes to four	Yoji gofun mae.
(J: four o'clock, five minutes before).	
A quarter to eleven.	Jūichiji jūgofun mae.
Four minutes to four.	Yoji yonpun mae.

Ni expresses 'at':

<i>She came at a quarter past three.</i>	<i>Sanji jūgofun ni kimashita.</i>
<i>We boarded the plane at half past four.</i>	<i>Yoji han ni hikoki ni norimashita.</i>

'What time ...' is *nanji*:

A: *What time is it?*

B: *It's 9.45 a.m. (p.m.)*

Nanji desu ka.

Gozen (gogo) kuji yonjū gofun desu.

A: *At what time in the morning do you leave?*

B: *Normally at seven o'clock.*

Asa no nanji ni dekakemasu ka.

Futsū wa shichiji desu.

28 Some other counters

(i) Money counters:

1 yen	ichien	500 yen	gohyakuen
5 yen	goen	1,000 yen	sen'en*
10 yen	jūen	5,000 yen	gosen'en*
50 yen	gojūen	10,000 yen	ichiman'en*
100 yen	hyakuen		

*The apostrophe here and elsewhere indicates that the pronunciation should be senyen, gosenyen, ichimanyen, etc.

'How much?' is *ikura*:

A: *How much is it to Osaka?* Ōsaka made wa ikura desu ka.

B: *It's 2,000 yen.* Nisen'en* desu.

A: *How much did the ticket cost?* Kippu wa ikura kakarimashita ka.

B: *10,000 yen.* Ichiman'en* desu.

(ii) People counters:

'One person' is *hitori*; 'two people' is *futari*, but from three people onwards the counter *nin* is used ('four people' is *yonin*). 'How many people' is *nannin*:

A: *How many came?* Nannin kimashita ka.

B: *Four friends came.* Tomodachi ga yonin kimashita.

(iii) Cylindrical things (e.g. bottles, pencils, legs):

Note the phonetic changes for hon: *ippon*, *nihon*, *sanbon*, *yonhon*, *gohon*, *roppon*, *nanahon*, *hachihon* (or *happon*), *kyūhon*, *juppon*, *jūppon* etc. 'How many?' is *nanbon*:

A: *Have you got any pencils?*

B: *Yes, there are two here.*

Enpitsu wa arimasu ka.

Koko ni wa nihon* arimasu yo.

A: *How many bottles of beer did you buy?*

B: *Six.*

Biru wa nanbon* kaimashita ka.

Roppon* desu.

(* When counters are used alone no particle is required.)

(iv) Cupfuls, spoonfuls:

The phonetic changes for *hai* are the same as for *hon*. 'How many (spoonfuls/cupfuls)?' is *nanbai*:

A: *How many spoons of sugar shall I put in?* Satō wa nanbai iremashō ka.

B: *Two spoons for me, please.* Nihai kudasai.

(v) Flat things (e.g. sheets of paper, stamps, slices of bread):

The counter is *mai*. 'How many?' is *nanmai*:

A: *How many pieces of paper?* Kami wa nanmai desu ka.

B: *Seven please.* Nanamai kudasai.

(vi) Books, magazines:

The counter is *satsu*. Note the phonetic changes with 1, 11, etc. (*issatsu*, *jūssatsu*), and 10, 20, etc. (*jussatsu*, *nijussatsu*). 'How many books?' is *nansatsu*:

A: *I borrowed seven books.*

Hon o nansatsu karimashita.

B: *How many?*

Nansatsu desu ka.

(vii) Times; floors (of a building):

The counter is **kai**. Note the phonetic changes in 1 floor/time (**ikkai**), 6 floors/times (**rokkai**), and 10 floors/times (**jukkai**). 'How many floors/times?' is **nankai**:

A: *How many times have you seen that film?* Ano eiga o nankai mimashita ka.

B: *Twice.* Nikai mimashita.

A: *Excuse me, what floor is the toy department?* Sumimasen. O-mocha uriba wa nankai desu ka.

B: *It's on the sixth floor.* Rokkai de gozaimasu.

Other counters will be introduced later. For things which don't have their own counter you'll need the Japanese number system.

Exercise 7

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How many went with you?' 'I went alone.'
- 2 Ten 60-yen stamps please.
- 3 'How much is it to Nagasaki from here?' '20,000 yen.'
- 4 I phoned him ten times.
- 5 My telephone number is 654 2908*.

(* This would read *roku go yon no ni kyū zero hachi*.)

29 Numbers (Japanese)

You need to know Japanese numbers up to 10 (thereafter the Chinese system is used). Japanese numbers are used for counting tables, chairs, boxes, fruit and vegetables and other things which don't have counters of their own. (You may well hear the Japanese system used for items which do have counters as well!)

Learn the numbers, all of which, except for 10, are almost always found with the suffix **tsu**:

1	hitotsu	7	nanatsu
2	futatsu	8	yattsu
3	mittsu	9	kokonotsu
4	yottsu	10	tō
5	itsutsu	11	jūichi
6	muttsu	12	jūni

'How many' is **ikutsu**:

I bought three chairs and a table in the sale.

Isu o mittsu to tēburu o hitotsu bāgen sēru de kaimashita.

A: *How many suitcases have you got?*

B: *Three.*

Sūtsukēsu wa ikutsu arimasu ka.
Mittsu arimasu.

Japanese numbers are also used for counting age (20 is **hatachi**). 'How old' is (**o-**)**ikutsu**:

A: *How old is he?* Ikutsu desu ka.
B: *He's eight.* Yattsu desu.

Sai with the Chinese system is also used for age. Note phonetic changes with 1 (**issai**), 8 (**hassai**), 10 (**jussai**). 'How old' is **nansai**:

A: *How old are you?* Nansai desu ka.
B: *I'm five.* Gosai desu.

30 Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers (1st, 2nd, etc.) are made by adding *me* to any of the counters. Consider the following:

- A: Let's take (*j*; turn) the second
turning to the right.
Futatsume no kado o migi e
magarimashō.
- B: Let's make it the third.
Mittsume ni shimashō.

31 Dates (i)

The days of the month from 1st to 10th are based on the Japanese system. Learn the following:

1st	tsuitachi	6th	muika
2nd	futsuka	7th	nanoka
3rd	mikka	8th	yōka
4th	yokka	9th	kokonoka
5th	itsuka	10th	tōka

From the 11th to the 31st, the Chinese system with the counter *nichi* is used (*jūichinichi*, *jūnichinichi*, etc.) with the following exceptions: 14th, 24th are *jūyokka*, *nijūyokka*; 17th, 27th are *jūshichi*, *nijūshichinichi* (and not *jūnana*, *nijūnana*); 20th is *hatsuka*. 'What day/date' is *nannichi*:

- A: What's the date today?
B: Umm, isn't it the 20th?

A: What day shall we go back on?
B: Umm, let's go back on the 10th.

Kyō wa nannichi desu ka.
Etto, hatsuka ja arimasen ka.

Nannichi ni kaerimashō ka.
Sō desu ne. Tōka ni kaerimashō.

32 Dates (ii)

Days of the week are:

Monday	getsuyōbi
Tuesday	kayōbi
Wednesday	suiyōbi
Thursday	mokuyōbi
Friday	kinyōbi
Saturday	doyōbi
Sunday	nichiyōbi

'What day (of the week)' is *nanyōbi*.

For months of the year use the counter *gatsu* (notice how this is added to a Chinese number, 1 for January, 2 for February, and so on):

January	ichigatsu
February	nigatsu
March	sangatsu
April	shigatsu
May	gogatsu
June	rokugatsu
July	shichigatsu
August	hachigatsu
September	kugatsu
October	jūgatsu
November	jūichigatsu
December	jūnigatsu

'What month' is *nangatsu*.

Years use the counter *nen*:

1868	senhappyaku rokujūhachinen
1956	senkyūhyaku gojūrokunen
1984	senkyūhyaku hachijūyonen

'What year' is *nannen*.

Consider the following:

- A: In what year were you born? Nannen ni umaremashita ka.
B: I was born on the 13th of March 1956. Senkyūhyaku gojūrokunen sangatsu (no) jūsannichi ni umaremashita.

A: What day of the week is the 4th of April this year? Kotoshi no shigatsu yokka wa nanyōbi desu ka.
B: It's a Thursday. Mokuyōbi desu yo.

33 'Only'

There are two expressions for 'only' in Japanese: *shika* and *dake*. *Shika*, always used with a negative verb, is the more common. The particles *wa*, *ga* and *o* are omitted:

- I'm the only one here. Watashi shika imasen.
I've only got one 10,000-yen note. Ichiman'en satsu wa ichimai shika arimasen.
We're only going to Nara. Nara ni shika ikimasen.

Dake, like *shika*, follows the word concerned. It does not take the negative:

- A: I only went there once. Ikkai dake ikimashita.
B: Is that all? Sore dake desu ka.

The two words together are emphatic:

- I'm only going to be here for a year. Ichinen dake shika imasen.

34 Miscellaneous numeral expressions

- (i) 'About' – *goro* (used of time only), *gurai*:
A: At about what time shall we go? Nanji goro (ni) dekakemashō ka.
B: Let's leave at about six o'clock. Rokuji goro (ni) dekakemashō.

A: About how much does it cost? Ikura gurai kakarimasu ka.
B: It's only about 10,000 yen. Ichiman'en gurai shika kakarimasen.

(ii) 'A little' and 'a lot' – *sukoshi*, *chotto* and *takusan*, *amari*:

- Shall we have just a little sashimi? Sashimi o sukoshi dake tabemashō ka.
I ate a lot (of food) today. Kyō wa gohan o takusan tabemashita.
I didn't eat a lot today. Kyō wa amari (takusan)* tabemasen deshita.

* *Amari (takusan)* is used with a negative to mean 'not much'.

- (iii) 'Some more', 'a little more' – *mō*:
A: Would you like some more beer? Biru wa mō sukoshi nomimasu ka.
B: Yes, I'll have just a little bit more. Hai, mō sukoshi dake itadakimasu.

A: One more orange, please. Mikan o mō hitotsu kudasai.
B: Just (only) one? Hitotsu dake desu ka.

Exercise 8

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How many people came to your party?'
'Only three (came).'
- 2 I'll have just one more glass of beer.
- 3 Roughly (about) when will you be going?
- 4 How many pieces of paper did you use for (ni) that?
- 5 This is my sixth glass of beer.

CONVERSATION 5A

Birthdays

A friend (A) asks John (J) about his birthday:

- A: Jon-san no tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.
J: Raishū desu yo.
A: Sō desu ka. Watashi no tanjōbi mo raishū desu.
J: È! Raishū no nanyōbi desu ka.
A: Kayōbi desu. Jūshichinichi no kayōbi desu yo.
J: È! Watashi wa hatsuka desu'.
A: Jon-san wa nannen umare² desu ka. Watashi wa rokujūnen desu.
J: Onaji desu.

CONVERSATION 5B

At the post office

Mrs Brown (C) asks the counter clerk (X) for stamps and postcards:

- C: Nanajūen no kitte o nimai ni³ hagaki o yonmai kudasai. Sore kara kono tegami o Furansu made o-negai shimasu.
X: Kôkûbin desu ka funabin desu ka.
C: Kôkûbin de⁴ o-negai shimasu. Sore ni earogramu o ichimai kudasai.
X: Sore de yoroshii desu ka.
C: Hai, sore dake desu.
X: Zenbu de⁵ nana hyakuen desu ... Hai, chôdo nana hyakuen (o) o-azukari shimasu. Arigatô gozaimasu.

CONVERSATION 5C

At the station ticket office

Mr Brown (B) asks about trains to Kyoto:

- B: Tsugi no Kyôto-yuki⁶ wa nanji nanpun-hatsu⁷ desu ka.
X: Kuji juppun desu. Ato⁸ jûgofun arimasu.
B: Sore ja Kyôto made otona nimai⁹ o-negai shimasu.
X: Katamichi desu ka ôfuku desu ka.
B: Ôfuku desu. Ikura desu ka.
X: Kyûsen'en desu. Hai, ichiman'en (o) o-azukari shimasu. Sen'en no o-kaeshi desu. Arigatô gozaimashita.



Chapter 6

B: Nanbansenⁱⁱ desu ka.

X: Gobansen desu.

On the train, the conductor (C) comes round:

C: Jōshaken o haiken itashimasuⁱⁱ ... Kore wa Kyōto-yuki ja arimasen yo. Nagoya-yuki desu.

B: Shimatta! Densha o machigaemashita!

Notes:

1. *watashi wa hatsuka desu*: lit. 'as for me, it's the twentieth'.
2. *nannen umare*: set phrase for 'What year were you born in?'
3. *ni*: 'and'.
4. *kōkūbin de*: 'by (air)'.
5. *sore de yoroshii desu ka*: 'Will that be all?'
6. *zenbu de*: 'all together'.
7. *Kyōto-yuki*: '(the train) heading for Kyoto'.
8. *nanji nanopun-hatsu*: 'at how many minutes past what hour does it leave?'
9. *ato*: 'there are 15 minutes left'; *ato* followed by counter often means '... left'.
10. *otona nimai*: it is unnecessary to use the word for ticket. The counter alone makes it clear what is meant.
11. *nanbansen*: *bansen* is the counter for platforms.
12. *haiken itashimasu*: 'I shall look at your tickets'; *haiken itasu/itashimasu* is a humble form of *miru/mimasu*. See Chapter 20.

MAIN POINTS:
Adjectives; adverbs.

CONVERSATIONS:
(a) 'Your Japanese is good'; (b) A packed lunch.

35 Adjectives A (i)

There are two basic but quite different types of adjective. One is the *i* adjective (all adjectives of this type end in *i*). It is essential from the first to understand that *i* adjectives are quite unlike adjectives in English. Strictly speaking, they are verbs.

Take the sentence 'the car is fast'. In Japanese, the 'is fast' part is translated by the single word *hayai*. *Hayai*, then, means not just 'fast' but 'is fast'. These *i* adjectives, being strictly verbs, do not have singular or plural forms, nor any 1st, 2nd or 3rd person forms, so 'I am/you are/she, he, it is/we are etc. fast' may all be translated by the one word *hayai*. Study these examples:

I'm young.
You're clever.
That is tasty.

(Watashi wa) wakai.
(Anata wa) kashikoi.
(Sore wa) oishii.

36 Adjectives A (ii)

It follows that to say 'it isn't fast', 'it was fast' or 'it wasn't fast', the present negative, the past or the past negative forms of *hayai* are needed.

The present negative of an i adjective is made by changing the final i to ku and then adding nai:

hayai → *hayaku* → *hayaku nai*. Cover up the right-hand side to check you can form the present negative of the following adjectives:

takai (high/expensive)	→	takaku nai
hikui (low)		hikuku nai
yasui (cheap)		yasuku nai
ōkii (big)		ōkiku nai
chisai (small)		chīsaku nai
nagai (long)		nagaku nai
mijikai (short)		mijikaku nai
hayai (fast/early)		hayaku nai
osoi (slow/late)		osoku nai
omoshiroi (interesting/funny)		omoshiroku nai
tsumaranai (boring/tiresome)		tsumaranaku nai

The past (positive) of the i adjective is made by replacing the final i with katta: *hayai* → *haya* → *hayakatta*.

The past negative is made from the present negative by changing nai to nakatta:

hayaku nai (present negative) → *hayaku nakatta*.

Check you can form the past, positive and negative of the following:

yasashii (easy/kind)	→	yasashikatta; yasashiku nakatta
muzukashii (difficult)		muzukashikatta; muzukashiku nakatta
kitsui (tight)		kitsukatta; kitsuku nakatta
yurui (loose)		yurukatta; yuruku nakatta
katai (hard)		katakatta; kataku nakatta
yawarakai (soft)		yawarakakatta; yawarakaku nakatta
amai (sweet)		amakatta; amaku nakatta
karai (spicy/hot)		karakatta; karaku nakatta
samui (cold [weather])		samukatta; samuku nakatta
atsui (hot)		atsukatta; atsuku nakatta
warui (bad)		warukatta; waruku nakatta
ii (good/nice)		yokatta; yoku nakatta*

(* *Yokatta* and *yoku nakatta* come from *yo*, the old form of *ii*.)

All the adjectival forms above are similar, in terms of politeness, to the plain form of verbs. To make them polite it is necessary to add desu. Here desu has no meaning whatsoever, it simply makes the adjective more polite.

N.B. Nai in the negative examples is, in fact, the plain form of arimasen. It follows then that *hayaku arimasen* and *hayaku arimasen deshita* will be alternatives for *hayaku nai desu* and *hayaku nakatta desu*. Note here also that *de wa (ja) arimasen* and *de wa (ja) arimasen deshita* have rather more common forms in *de wa (ja) nai desu* and *de wa (ja) nakatta desu* respectively. Study the following:

A: *What was it like? Was it interesting?*

B: *It was very interesting.*

Dō deshita ka.

Omoshirokatta desu ka.

Totemo¹ omoshirokatta desu yo.

A: *Was the meal tasty?*

B: *No, it wasn't very tasty.*

Gohan wa oishikatta desu ka.

Amari² oishiku nakatta desu yo.

(1. *totemo* – 'very' in positive sentences; 2. *amari* – 'very' in negative sentences)

37 Adjectives A (iii)

The *i* adjectives are used before nouns. Even in polite speech, though, *desu* is not added to the *i* adjective in the pre-noun position:

<i>an interesting place</i>	omoshiroi tokoro
<i>hot days</i>	atsui hi
<i>a nice person</i>	ii hito

If you recall that *i* adjectives are really verbs, it is easy to understand that the above are probably more precisely translated as '*a place which is interesting*'; '*days which are hot*' and '*a person who is nice*'. Bear in mind, then, that no such word as the English '*which*', '*who*', etc. is necessary:

<i>They've only got fish which isn't very tasty.</i>	Amari oishiku nai sakana shika nai desu.
<i>He's a person who is very kind.</i>	Totemo yashii hito desu.

Exercise 9

Put into polite Japanese:

- 1 Today was very hot, wasn't it?
- 2 We went to buy some lacquerware, but they didn't have any.
- 3 This tea wasn't very tasty, was it?
- 4 The tall man is my father. The short man is his friend.
- 5 He's very kind.

38 Adjectives B (i)

The second major group of adjectives is grammatically a lot closer to English adjectives, since the verb 'to be' must be supplied. Below is a list of some common adjectives of this type:

simple	kantan	rude	shitsurei
disliked	kirai	ill, sick	byōki
famous	yūmei	strange	hen
liked	suki	stupid	baka
necessary	hitsuyō	unpleasant	iya
polite	teinei	useless	dame
pretty	kirei	various	iroiro

39 Adjectives B (ii)

The present positive plain form of these adjectives is made by adding *da*. The present negative, the past and the past negative plain forms are made with the appropriate plain forms of *da/desu*:

Present negative – *de wa (ja) nai*

Past – *datta*

Past negative – *de wa (ja) nakatta*

The present positive polite form requires *desu*, and the past positive polite form *deshita*. The present and past negative polite forms are made usually by the addition of *desu* to the plain form, i.e. *de wa (ja) nai desu*; *de wa (ja) nakatta desu*. Consider the following:

*It's simple.
Isn't she famous?*

*Kantan desu yo.
Kanojo wa yūmei ja nai
desu ka.*

He was very rude.

*Kare wa totemo shitsurei
deshita.*

It wasn't very quiet, was it?

*Amari shizuka ja nakatta
desu ne.*

40 Adjectives B (iii)

This second group is known as na adjectives because when placed before a noun in the present positive tense only, they take the particle na:

a strange person	hen na hito
necessary things	hitsuyō na mono
a pretty face	kirei na kao

Note that na represents the verb 'to be', and so the above can equally well be translated as 'a person who is strange'; 'things which are necessary'; 'a face which is pretty'.

When the adjective comes before the noun in all but the present positive, the appropriate plain forms of da/desu are used. Consider the following:

<i>He's a not very kind person.</i>	Amari shinsetsu ja nai hito desu.
<i>She's a very rude person.</i>	Kanojo wa totomo shitsurei na hito desu yo.

Note that three i adjectives function also as na adjectives. They are 'big' – ōkii or ōki na; 'small' – chīsai or chīsa na; 'funny' (amusing or strange) – okashii or okashi na:

<i>He's a big man, isn't he?</i>	Kare wa ōkii (or ōki na) hito desu ne.
<i>That's a small dictionary.</i>	chīsai (or chīsa na) jisho desu ne.
<i>That's a funny story.</i>	Okashii (or okashi na) hanashi desu yo.

(In the final position, however, they all appear only as i adjectives.)

'Same (as) – (to) onaji – is irregular. Before nouns, it does not take na, but in other ways it functions as a na adjective:

<i>It's the same camera.</i>	Onaji kamera desu.
<i>It wasn't the same as mine.</i>	Watashi no to onaji ja nakatta desu yo.

41 'Too ...'

'Too ...': remove the final i and add the verb sugiru/sugimasu; with na adjectives add sugiru/sugimasu to the adjective without na. Amari (ni mo) may precede the adjective:

<i>It's too tight, isn't it?</i>	Kitsusugimasu ne.
<i>Isn't it too expensive?</i>	Amari takasugimasen ka.
<i>Isn't this too easy?</i>	Kore wa kantansugimasen ka.

42 Adverbs (i)

Two types of adverb are made from the two main types of adjective. With i adjectives, the final i syllable is replaced by ku:

hayai (quick/early) → hayaku (quickly/early)
ii (good) → yoku (well)*

* yoku has the additional meaning of 'often'.

With na adjectives, add ni:

kirei (pretty/clean) → kirei ni (prettily/cleanly)
shinsetsu (kind) → shinsetsu ni (kindly)

Consider the following examples:

<i>I bought it cheaply.</i>	Yasuku kaimashita.
<i>She taught in a kind way.</i>	Shinsetsu ni oshiemashita.

'Become (get) ...' are made by adverbs and the verb naru/narimasu (become):

<i>It's going to get cold(er).</i>	Samuku narimasu yo.
<i>She's become pretty.</i>	Kirei ni narimashita.

Adverbs are used with suru/shimasu too:

<i>Let's tidy up (ʃ: make tidy)</i> the room.	Heya o kirei ni shimashō ka.
<i>I'll turn (ʃ: make) the sound</i> down (up).	Oto o chisaku (ōkiku) shimasu.

43 Adverbs (ii)

There is another group of very common adverbs, many of which are followed by *to*. Here is a small selection:

<i>Did you do it properly?</i>	Chan to shimashita ka.
<i>I slammed the window (J: shut it bang!).</i>	Batan to mado o shime mashita.
<i>I explained it clearly.</i>	Hakkiri setsumei shimashita.
<i>Let's have a leisurely cup of tea (J: Let's drink slowly).</i>	Yukkuri o-cha demo nomimashō.

Finally note the following sets of adverb-related words:

How?	Dō	or	Dō yatte
In this way	Kō	or	Kō yatte
In that way	Sō	or	Sō yatte
In that way	Ā	or	Ā yatte

- A: *How do you write it? Do you write it like this?* Dō yatte kakimasu ka. Kō kakimasu ka.
B: *No, you don't write it like that. You write it like this.* Īe, sō kakimasen. Kō kakimasu yo.

Exercise 10

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How do you go to school?' 'Me, I go by bus.'
- 2 She speaks very well, doesn't she?
- 3 'What about the size?' 'The size is just right.'
- 4 That Toyota is the same as my friend's.
- 5 Do you often go skiing?

CONVERSATION 6A

'Your Japanese is good'

Mr Brown's friend (A) congratulates him on his accent:

- A: Nihongo ga o-jōzu¹ desu ne.
B: Ya, sonna koto wa arimasen yo. Mada mada² desu.
A: Hontō desu yo. Hatsuon ga totomo kirei desu. Nihonjin to kawarimasen. Hontō ni kirei ni hanashimasu yo.
B: Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.
A: Yappari muzukashii desu ka, Nihongo wa³.
B: Totemo muzukashii desu. Taihen kurō shima shita. Hatsuon wa wari to yasashii desu ga bunpō wa yayakoshii desu. Sore kara yomikaki mo taihen desu. Katakana mo hiragana mo kanji mo arimasu shi⁴. Hijō ni oboenikui desu⁵.
A: Sore wa sō desu⁶ ne. Kioku no mondai dake desu. Shikashi erai⁷ desu ne.

CONVERSATION 6B

A packed lunch

Mr Brown (B) and Mr Tanaka (T) buy a packed lunch on the train to Kyoto, from a sales girl (S):

- S: Maku-no-uchi, Sabazushi, Unagibentō ni O-cha, O-bīru wa ikaga desu ka.
T: Maku-no-uchi (o) futatsu kudasai.
S: Hai, Maku-no-uchi o-futatsu desu ne. Hai dōzo. O-nomimono wa?
T: Watashi wa tsumetai mono ga ii desu ne ... Biru (o) kudasai. Buraun-san wa?
B: Watashi wa atsui o-cha ga ii desu ne.



- S: Hai, dōzo sen nihyakuen de gozaimasu. Hai, chōdo sen nihyakuen itadakimasu'. Arigatō gozaimashita.
- T: Maku-no-uchi wa hajimete' desu ka Buraunsan?
- B: Hajimete desu yo. Demo oishisō" desu ne. Dō iu mono ga haitte imasu" ka.
- T: Mazu gohan desu ne. Sore kara kono ki-iroppoi" no wa takuan desu. Tsukemono desu yo.
- B: Ironna" mono ga arimasu ne. Kono akai no wa?
- T: Sore wa ebi desu. Hontō wa akaku arimasen. Akaku iro o tsuketa dake" desu. Ma, tabemashō. Itadakimasu.
- B: Itadakimasu. Kono hosonagai no wa ebi furai desu ne. Oishii desu. Kono sōsu o kakemasu ka.
- T: Sō desu. Chotto karai desu yo. Hoka ni wa", kono kuroppei no wa konbu desu. Omoshiroi aji desu yo.
- B: Mō onaka ga ippai desu. Takusan tabesugimashita", Demo totemo oishikatta desu yo.
- T: Kore o tabete mite kudasai". Umeboshi desu. Totemo suppai desu ga shōkafuryō ni saikō desu.

Notes:

1. O-jōzu: 'you're good at ...'; o is added out of respect for the person addressed. Jōzu is explained in Chapter 12.
2. mada mada: here it means 'that's a long way off'.
3. ... desu ka, Nihongo wa: 'Is it difficult, Japanese?'; the inverted order is common in spoken Japanese.
4. shi: 'and also'.
5. oboenikui: 'difficult to remember'; replace masu with the adjective nikui to make 'difficult to ...'; yasui makes 'easy to ...'. For example: *Is Osaka dialect hard to understand?* Ōsaka-ben wa wakarinikui desu ka. And, *That man's Japanese is easy to understand.* Sono hito no Nihongo wa wakariyasui desu.
6. sore wa sō desu: 'it is as you say', 'you're right there'.
7. erai desu: here it means 'good for you'; elsewhere it means 'great', 'outstanding'.
8. chōdo ... itadakimasu: lit. 'I take from you just the right sum'.
9. hajimete desu ka: 'is it the first time you've had ...'; hajimete is a very useful word, e.g. *Is this the first time you've been to Japan?* Nihon wa hajimete desu ka.
10. oishisō desu: 'it looks tasty', see Chapter 13.
11. haitte imasu ka: 'What sort of things are in it?'; for the te imasu construction, see Chapter 8.
12. ki-iroppoi: 'yellowish'; several adjectives have -ppoi added to them, but the meaning varies depending on the adjective used. One of the most common is yasuppoi, 'cheapo'.
13. ironna: 'various'; a very common abbreviated form of iroiro na.
14. akaku iro o tsuketa dake desu: 'they've simply coloured it red'.
15. Hoka ni wa: 'in addition', 'apart from that'.
16. takusan tabesugimashita: 'I've eaten too much'; just as sugiru/sugimasu can be added to adjectives, so it can to verbs, often with takusan, 'much'.
17. tabete mite kudasai: 'eat and see', 'try this'.

Chapter 7

MAIN POINTS:

Formation of the *te* form of verbs and adjectives;
applications of the *te* form.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Using the telephone; (b) On the telephone.

44 Verbs and the *te* form (i)

In order to make the *te* form, which has many applications, you will need first to distinguish three different types of verb: Group 1 verbs, Group 2 verbs and (thirdly) verbs whose *te* form is irregular.

- (a) A Group 1 verb is a verb whose plain form ends in the syllable *ru* and whose *masu* form is made by taking off the *ru* and putting *masu* in its place: e.g.
taberu → *tabe* → *tabemasu*; *miru* → *mi* → *mimasu*;
iru → *i* → *imasu*.

The *te* form of these verbs is made by replacing *ru* with *te*. Check the following:

<i>taberu</i> (eat)	→	<i>tabete</i>
<i>miru</i> (see/watch/look at)		<i>mite</i>
<i>iru</i> (be)		<i>ite</i>
<i>deru</i> (go out)		<i>dete</i>
<i>dekakeru</i> (depart)		<i>dekakete</i>

- (b) Group 2 verbs include all other verbs (except a small number of irregular verbs), i.e. verbs whose plain form ends in the syllables *u*; *ku*; *gu*; *su*; *tsu*; *nu*; *bu*; *mu*. Group 2 verbs also include some verbs which end in *ru*. There need be no confusion, however, since Group 2 *ru* verbs in the *masu* form become *-rimasu*. (All verbs are given in the vocabularies in both plain and *masu* forms, so you will know immediately which group the verb belongs to.) Compare the following:

- iru* → *imasu* (be, exist) – Group 1
iru → *irimasu* (be necessary) – Group 2

Below is a list of all possible types of Group 2 verbs and their corresponding *te* forms:

<i>Plain form</i>	<i>te form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<i>kau</i> (kaimasu)	<i>katte</i>	buy <i>vt.</i>
<i>kaku</i> (kakimasu)	<i>kaite</i>	write <i>vt.</i>
<i>oyogu</i> (oyogimasu)	<i>oyoide</i>	swim <i>vi.</i>
<i>dasu</i> (dashimasu)	<i>dashite</i>	take out <i>vt.</i>
<i>matsu</i> (machimasu)	<i>matte</i>	wait for <i>vt.</i>
<i>shimu</i> (shinimasu)	<i>shinde</i>	die <i>vi.</i>
<i>yobu</i> (yobimasu)	<i>yonde</i>	call, invite <i>vt.</i>
<i>yamu</i> (yamimasu)	<i>yande</i>	stop <i>vi.</i>
<i>kiru</i> (kirimasu)	<i>kitte</i>	cut <i>vt.</i>

- (c) Verbs whose *te* forms are irregular:

<i>Plain form</i>	<i>te form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
<i>da</i> (desu)	<i>de</i>	be
<i>iku</i> (ikimasu)	<i>itte*</i>	go <i>vi.</i>
<i>kuru</i> (kimasu)	<i>kite</i>	come <i>vi.</i>
<i>suru</i> (shimasu)	<i>shite</i>	do <i>vt.</i>

* *Iku/ikimasu* is irregular only in its *te* and *ta* forms (see Chapter 9).

Check you can form the *te* forms of the following assortment of Group 1, Group 2 and irregular verbs:

neru/nemasu (sleep)	→	nete
kaeru/kaerimasu (go home)		kaette
kaeru/kaemasu (change vt.)		kaete
arau/araimasu (wash)		aratte
isogu/isogimasu (hurry vi.)		isoide
tatsu/tachimasu (stand vi.)		tatte
tateru/tatemasu (stand up vt.)		tatete
suru/shimasu (do/make)		shite

45 Verbs and the *te* form (ii)

There are two negative *te* forms, both made from the negative plain forms. The negative plain forms and the first of the *te* forms are as follows:

Group 1 verbs:

Positive plain form	Negative plain form	Negative te form
taberu (tabemasu)	tabenai	tabenakute
miru (mimasu)	minai	minakute

Group 2 verbs:

Positive plain form	Negative plain form	Negative te form
kau (kaimasu)	kawanai	kawanakute
kaku (kakimasu)	kakanai	kakanakute
matsu (machimasu)	matanai	matanakute

Irregular verbs:

Positive plain form	Negative plain form	Negative te form
da (desu)	de wa (ja) nai	de wa (ja) nakute
suru (shimasu)	shinai	shinakute
kuru (kimasu)	konai	konakute

Check you can form the negative *te* forms of the following selection:

suru/shimasu	→	shinakute
kaeru/kaerimasu		kaeranakute
kaeru/kaemasu		kaenakute
dasu/dashimasu		dasanakute
iru/imasu		inakute
kau/kaimasu		kawanakute

The second negative *te* form is made by adding *de* to the negative plain form:

kawanai	→	kawanaide
shinai	→	shinaide

N.B. This second form exists for all verbs except *nai* and *de wa (ja) nai*.

46 Verbs and the *te* form (iii)

Usages of the *te* form:

- (i) 'Please ...' – *te* form plus *kudasai*; 'Would you be kind enough to ... ?' *te* form plus *itadakemasen ka* (lit. Can't I get you to ... ?):

Please come with me.	Issho ni kite kudasai.
Would you be kind enough to speak slowly?	Yukkuri hanashite itadakemasen ka.
Would you be kind enough to wait there (for me) for a minute?	Asoko de sukoshi dake matte itadakemasen ka.

In the negative, only the *naide* form can be used:

Please don't talk.	Hanasanaide kudasai.
Please don't tell him.	Kare ni iwanaide kudasai.

(ii) The *te* form is used to join two clauses together where English would often use 'and (then)'. Whatever the tense of the English verb which precedes the 'and', the *te* form stays the same. Its tense is supplied by the final verb. Study the following:

This is my wife Chieko and this is my son Thomas.

I went back home and watched the TV.

Let's go to a film and then have some sushi.

She went out for a drink and I stayed behind.

Go straight along this street and turn right at the end.

Kore wa kanai no Chieko
de kore wa musuko no
Tomasu desu.

Uchi e kaette terebi o
mimashita.

Eiga ni itte sushi o tabe ni
ikimashō.

Kanojo wa nomi ni itte
watashi wa uchi ni
nokorimashita.

Kono michi o massugu itte
tsukiatari o migi e
magatte kudasai.

The *te* form may also mean 'and so':

He caught a cold and (so didn't come).

There were all sorts of problems so I gave up.

Kare wa kaze o hite
kimasen deshita.

Ironna mondai ga atte
akiramemashita.

(iii) 'After doing ...' may be expressed by ... *te kara*:

What are you going to do after writing the letter?

What are you going to do after you get home?

Tegami o kaite kara dō
shimasu ka.

Ie ni tsuite kara dō
shimasu ka.

(iv) The *te* form is used adverbially:

*We went on foot (J: walking),
Let's hurry there (J: Let's go there hurrying).*

I ran here from the station.

(By) listening to the radio every day her English became good.

Aruite ikimashita.
Isoide ikimashō.

Eki kara koko made
hashitte kimashita.
Kanojo wa mainichi rajo o
kiite Eigo ga umaku
narimashita.

47 Verbs and the *te* form (iv)

Many idiomatic expressions are made by adding *te* forms to *kuru/kimasu* and *iku/ikimasu*. Study the following carefully:

i) -*te kuru/kimasu*

Let's go and see
(J: having seen, come).

I'll go and buy some beer
(J: having bought, I'll come).

I'll be straight back
(J: having been, I'll come).

Let's go and get our coats.
Bring me the paper, please.

I've brought my father.
What time are you coming back?

Mite kimashō.

Biru o katte kimasu.

Sugu itte kimasu.

Koto o totte kimashō.
Shinbun o motte kite
kudasai*.

Chichi o tsurete kimashita*.
Nanji ni kaette kimasu ka.

* Note that *motte kuru/kimasu* is used of inanimate objects, *tsurete kuru/kimasu* of people.

(ii) -te iku/ikimasu

Shall we eat first.

(J: having eaten, shall we go?)

I'll buy some wine on the way

(J: having bought, I'll go).

Please take your umbrella.

I'll take him to the bus stop.

Tabete ikimashō ka.

Wain o katte ikimasu yo.

Kasa o motte itte kudasai*.
Basu-tei made tsurete
ikimasu*.

* Again, note that **motte iku/ikimasu** is used of inanimate objects, **tsurete iku/ikimasu** of people.

Exercise 11

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I'm going to go and buy two postcards and six stamps.
- 2 Please sit there and wait.
- 3 They went to Kyoto, saw the Ryoanji temple and then came back.
- 4 'How many minutes does it take to walk?' I'm not sure. It takes about twenty minutes by bus.'
- 5 Will you go and get (J: call) your father, please.

48 Verbs and the *te* form (v)

The uses of the negative *te* form are similar to those of the positive *te* form. With **nakute**, often the sense is 'not ... instead', 'not ... and so':

I didn't have any time so I came straight back home. Jikan ga nakute suga kaette kimashita.

He's lonely as he hasn't got any friends. Tomodachi ga inakute samishii desu.

It isn't today, it's tomorrow. Kyō ja nakute ashita desu.
It wasn't me, it was him. Watashi ja nakute kare deshita.

With **naide** the sense is often 'not ... instead' or 'without ...ing', but the subject of the main verb and the *naide* clause must be the same:

Yesterday I went straight to bed without having a bath. Kinō o-furo ni hairanaide suga nemashita.

He left the shop without paying. O-kane o harawanaide o-mise o demashita.

49 Adjectival *te* forms

Adjectival *te* forms are used to mean 'and' or 'and so' (see the examples below, to understand the sort of context these words might appear in). The positive and negative *te* forms of *i* adjectives are formed respectively as follows:

takai → takakute
takaku nai → takaku nakute

The positive/negative *te* forms of *na* adjectives are:

kantan → kantan de
kantan de wa (ja) nakute

It was interesting so I watched it from start to finish.

Something tasty and cheap would be nice.

*This is a nice big room.
It's a nice and simple story.*

**kute/de ii is 'nice and ...'*

Omoshirokute saisho kara
saigo made mimashita.
Oishikute yasui mono ga ii
desu ne.

Hirokute ii* heya desu ne.
Kantan de ii hanashi desu.

CONVERSATION 7A

Using the telephone

Mr Brown (B) asks how to use a public call box:

B: Sumimasen, denwa no tsukaikata¹ o oshiete
itadakemasen ka.

A: Tsukaikata desu ka. Ii desu yo. Jūen dama wa
takusan arimasu ka.

B: Etto, komakai no wa amari arimasen. Warui desu
ga², chotto kore o kuzushite itadakemasen ka.

A: Ii desu yo. Sore ja, mazu juwaki o totte, jūen dama
o sankō gurai irete, bangō o mawashite kudasai.

B: Arigatō gozaimashita. Etto, mazu juwaki o totte,
o-kane o irete, sore kara bangō o mawashite – 06
678 no 9809 desu ne – sore dake desu ne.

A: Sō desu.

B: Arigatō gozaimashita.

A: Dō itashimashite.

B: A, yappari hanashichū³ desu. Mō sukoshi matte
mata kakete mimashō⁴.

CONVERSATION 7B

On the telephone

When he gets through to the Katayamas' house, Mrs K answers:

Mrs K: Moshimoshi⁵.

B: Yabun osoku mōshiwake gozaimesen ga⁶,
Katayama-san no o-taku deshō ka.

Mrs K: Hai, sō desu.

B: Kunio-san wa irasshaimasu ka.

Mrs K: Hai, chotto matte kudasai, yonde kimasu.

B: Sumimasen.

Then his friend Kunio (K) comes to the phone:

K: Moshimoshi, Kunio desu ga.

B: Kunio-san? Jon desu.

K: A, Jon-san. O-hisashiburi desu ne. Genki
deshita ka.

B: Okage-sama de. Kunio wa?

K: Un, watashi mo genki deshita yo.

B: Tokoro de, Kunio, asatte wa hima desu ka.

K: Asatte wa doyōbi desu ne. Hima desu yo.

B: Sore ja, issho ni Kyōto made ikimasen ka.

K: Kyōto wa hisashiburi desu ne. Ii desu yo. Issho
ni ikimashō.

B: A, yokatta desu. Kyōto no doko o'
mawarimashō ka.

K: Mazu machiawase no jikan to basho o
kimemashō.

B: Sō desu ne.

K: Ōsaka eki no chūō guchi de hachiji goro ni
machiawase shite⁷ 8 ji han no densha ni notte
ikimashō.



- B: Hai, wakarimashita.
 K: Sore de wa asatte no asa no hachiji ni?
 B: Hai, tanoshimi ni shite imasu.
 K: Sore ja, o-yasumi nasai.
 B: O-yasumi nasai.

Notes:

1. **tsukaikata**: 'the way (how) to use'; replace masu with kata to say 'the way to/of ...' cf. **hanashikata**, 'way of speaking'; **hashirikata**, 'way of running'.
2. **warui desu ga**: 'I'm sorry, but ...'.
3. **hanashichū**: 'engaged'. There are a great number of uses of chū (jū). Some are time expressions: **kaigichū**, 'at a conference'; **shigotochū**, 'in the middle of work'; **ichinichijū**, 'all day long'; **hitobanjū**, 'all night long'; **ichinenjū**, 'all year long'. Some are place expressions: **karadajū ga itai desu**, 'all over my body hurts'; **iejū ga kitanaid esu**, 'the whole house is dirty'.
4. **kakete mimashō**: 'I'll try phoning again later'; te miru/mimasu means 'try doing', 'do and see'.
5. **moshimoshi**: 'Hello', used mostly over the phone.
6. **yabun osoku ...**; set phrase meaning 'I apologize for phoning late at night'.
7. **doko o mawarimashō**: 'Where shall we go round?'; **mawaru/mawarimasu** is a motion verb which takes o.
8. **machiawase suru/shimasu**: 'arrange to meet'. There is a large group of verbs formed by the addition of a noun (here **machiawase**) to suru/shimasu, e.g. **benkyō suru/shimasu** 'to study' → **benkyō suru/shimasu** 'to study'.
9. **hachiji ni**: 'See you at 8', informal.
10. **tanoshimi ni shite imasu**: 'I'm looking forward to it'. For te form plus iru/imasu see Chapter 8.

Chapter 8

MAIN POINTS:

Is/are doing, was/were doing; has/have done, had done; has/have been doing, had been doing; duration of time.

CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Asking a policeman; (b) 'What's on television?'

50 'Is/are doing'

'Is/are doing' is translated by the te form plus **iru/imasu**, **irassharu/irasshaimasu**, or **oru/orimasu**:

A: Are you listening?

B: No, I'm not.

Kiite imasu ka.

Ie, kiite imasen.

A: What's the Professor doing?

**Sensei wa nani o shite
irasshaimasu ka.**

B: He's talking to a visitor.

**O-kyaku-san to hanashite
irasshaimasu yo.**

'Was/were doing' involves changing masu to mashita:

A: What were you doing?

B: I was reading the paper.

Nani o shite imashita ka.

Shinbun o yonde imashita.

A: Who were you talking to?

**Dare to hanashite imashita
ka.**

B: I was talking to my teacher.

**Sensei to hanashite
imashita.**

In English, we don't necessarily use an 'ing' form to describe a continuing state of affairs: we say 'I love you' and not 'I'm loving you', and we may say 'I live here' as well as 'I'm living here'. In Japanese, however, if the state is continuing at the time of speaking, a *te imasu* form is generally used. Study some of the following:

I love you very much.

I lived (was living) in Kobe.

He works (is working) in Osaka.

I remember that too.

My children go to that school.

Is that writer still alive?

Do you know him?

Shitte imasu is unique – its negative form is not *shitte imasen*, but *shirimasan*:

A: Do you know Kyoto well?

B: No, I don't know it at all.

Totemo aishite imasu.

Watashi wa Kōbe ni sunde imashita.

Ōsaka de hataroite imasu.

Watashi mo oboete imasu.

Kodomo wa ano gakkō ni itte imasu.

Ano sakka wa mada ikite imasu ka.

Kare o shitte imasu ka.

Kyōto o yoku shitte imasu ka.

Īe, zenzen shirimasan.

Motte imasu is very common as 'have got':

A: Have you got any stamps?

B: No, I haven't.

Kitte o motte imasu ka.

Īe, motte imasen.

There is a selection of intransitive verbs whose *te iru/imasu* form translates the idea of 'passive state': e.g. 'be closed', 'be open', 'be hungry', 'be thirsty', 'be crowded', 'be empty', 'be tired':

A: Are the shops closed on Sunday?

B: No, in Japan, they're open every day.

A: Are you hungry?

B: No, I'm thirsty.

Nichiyōbi wa o-mise ga shimatte imasu ka.

Īe, Nihon de wa mainichi alte imasu.

Onaka ga suite imasu ka.

Īe, chigaimasu. Nodo ga kawaite imasu.

A: The trains are empty today, aren't they?

B: Yes they are. But they're usually crowded, aren't they?

Kyō wa densha ga suite imasu ne.

Sō desu ne. Futsū wa konde imasu kedo ne.

51 'Has/have, had done'

You know that both 'I bought a ticket' and 'I have bought a ticket' can be translated by *kippu o kaimashita*. A number of intransitive verbs, however, require the *te iru/imasu* form for their perfect tense. Below are some common verbs whose perfect form generally requires *te iru/imasu*:

iku/ikimasu (go)

kuru/kimasu (come)

deru/demasu (come/go out)

hairu/hairimasu (come/go in, enter)

dekakeru/dekakemasu (depart, set off)

tsuku/tsukimasu (arrive)

kaeru/kaerimasu (return)

neru/nemasu (go to sleep, go to bed)

okiru/okimasu (get up)

So, 'he's gone to (and is in) Nagasaki' is *Nagasaki e itte imasu*. (If, however, by 'he's gone to Nagasaki' you mean 'he's left for Nagasaki', then *ikimashita* will do!)

Study the following, noting that in some cases there are two English senses:

A parcel has come (is here).

Kozutsumi ga kite imasu yo.

She's gone into (she's in) the garden.

Niwa ni dete imasu.

She's gone back to (she's back in) America.

Amerika ni kaette imasu.

Have you got (are you) up yet?

Mō okite imasu ka.

She's been on TV a lot recently.

Sailkin yoku terebi ni dete imasu.

The most common way to say 'is in ...' is ... (no naka) ni haitte imasu (lit.: having entered, is in):

A: My passport was in my pocket.

B: Isn't it in your bag?

Pasupōto wa poketto no naka ni haitte imashita yo.
Kaban no naka ni haitte imasen ka.

The negative perfect of all verbs is translated by the te iru/imasu form, often with mada, 'not yet':

A: Haven't you seen

Kurosawa's new film?

B: No, I haven't seen it yet.

Kurosawa no atarashii eiga wa mite imasen ka.
Mada mite imasen yo.

Exercise 12

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Don't you remember that song by Nakajima Miyuki?' 'No, I don't.'
- 2 'Which university do you go to?' 'I don't go to university, I'm working.'
- 3 'Excuse me, but from what time to what time is the Post Office open?' 'I don't know.'
- 4 'Do you know the coffee shop next to the fish shop?' 'No, I don't.'
- 5 'He's gone back to his parents' place.' 'When did he go?'

52 Duration of time

(i) Years. Duration of years can be expressed with nen or with nenkan:

A: How many years were you there?
B: I was there for five years.

Nannen(kan) imashita ka.
Gonen(kan) imashita.

(ii) Months. For duration of months the Chinese system is used with the counter ka plus getsu (not gatsu):

1 month	ikkagetsu
2 months	nikagetsu
3 months	sankagetsu
4 months	yonkagetsu
5 months	gokagetsu
6 months	rokkagetsu
7 months	nanakagetsu
8 months	hachikagetsu (or hakkagetsu)
9 months	kyūkagetsu
10 months	jukkagetsu
11 months	jūikkagetsu
12 months	jūunikagetsu

A: About how many months did it take?
B: It took about ten altogether.

Nankagetsu gurai kakarimashita ka.
Zenbu de jukkagetsu kakarimashita.

(iii) Weeks. Duration of weeks is expressed by shūkan. Note the phonetic changes affecting '1 week' (isshūkan), '8 weeks' (hasshūkan) and '10 weeks' (jusshūkan). The interrogative form is nanshūkan.

A: How many weeks will it continue?
B: About four.

Nanshūkan tsuzukimasu ka.
Yonshūkan gurai.

(iv) Days. For duration of days the system is that for naming the days of the month, except that 'one day' is not tsuitachi but ichinichi. So, both 'the 2nd', 'the 3rd', 'the 4th' etc. and 'two days', 'three days', 'four days' etc. are translated by futsuka, mikka, yokka etc.

'How many days?' is nannichi:

A: *How many days did you spend there?*

Asoko de nannichi sugoshimashita ka.

B: *We spent only three days (there).*

Mikka shika sugoshimasen deshita.

(v) Hours and minutes. For duration of hours the suffix kan is attached to the o'clock times, while for minutes this suffix is not generally used:

One o'clock

ichiji

One hour

ichijikan

Half past two

nijihan

Two and a half hours

nijikanhan

A: *How many hours did it take?* Nanjikan kakarimashita ka.

B: *It only took about ten minutes.* Juppun gurai shika kakarimasen deshita.

'Ago' is translated by a duration expression followed by mae, 'before':

A: *How many hours ago did it close?* Nanjikan mae ni shimarimashita ka.

B: *It closed about four hours ago.* Yojikan gurai mae ni shimarimashita.

A: *About how many months ago did you come to Japan?* Nankagetsu gurai mae ni Nihon ni kimashita ka.

B: *Umm, I came about three months ago.* Etto, sankagetsu gurai mae ni kimashita.

53 'Has/have been doing'

'I have been studying Japanese for three months' may be expressed in two ways, either with sankagetsu or sankagetsu mae kara. 'How long ...' is dore gurai, or itsu kara. Study the following:

A: *How long have you been studying Japanese?*

Dore gurai Nihongo o benkyō shite imasu ka.

B: *I've only been studying for three months.*

Sankagetsu shika benkyō shite imasen yo.

A: *How long has the Professor been married?*

Sensei wa itsu kara kekkon shite irasshaimasu ka.

B: *He's been married for about five years.*

Gonen gurai mae kara kekkon shite irasshaimasu.

For 'had been doing' change masu to mashita:

I had been (was) waiting for six hours.

Rokujikan mo matte imashita.

In 'I've been living here since April', 'since' is kara:

A: *Since when (how long) have you been living in Japan?*

Itsu kara Nihon ni sunde imasu ka.

B: *I've been living here since April.*

Shigatsu kara koko ni sunde imasu.

Da/desu and iru/imasu do not have te imasu forms, so:

A: *How long have you been ill?* Itsu kara byōki desu ka.
B: *For about ten days.* Tōka gurai (mae kara) desu.

Such expressions as 'have you ever been (to Nagasaki)?' require a different construction altogether and are explained in Chapter 15.

Exercise 13

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How long have you been practising calligraphy?'
'For about six years.'
- 2 We go on holiday in June (of) every year for three weeks.
- 3 How long have you been in this beautiful country?
- 4 Being busy, I haven't read it yet.
- 5 They've been married for forty-five years.

CONVERSATION 8A

Asking a policeman

Mr Brown (B) asks first a passer-by (P), then a policeman (K: *keisatsukan*) how to find a bank:

- B: Sumimasen, ginkō o sagashite imasu ga kono hen ni nai desu ka.
- P: Kono hen wa yoku shirimases ga. Ano keisatsukan ni kiite mite¹ kudasai.
- B: Arigatō gozaimasu. Chotto ukagaimasu ga² ginkō wa chikaku ni arimasu ka.
- K: Sochira ni Dai Ichi Kangin' ga arimasu ga mö shimatte imasu yo. Nihon no ginkō wa gozen kuji kara gogo sanji made desu.
- B: Ä sô desu ka. Dô shimashô? Komarimashita³ ne.
- K: Nihongo⁴ ga o-jôzu desu ne ... O-kuni wa dochira desu ka.
- B: Kanada desu ga ...
- K: Itsu kara Nihon ni irassharu n'desu ka⁵.
- B: Etto, yonkagetsu gurai mae kara desu.
- K: Gaijin tôrokushô⁶ o chotto misete kudasai.
- B: Chotto matte kudasai. Kaban no naka ni haitte imasu. Ä. Arimashita. Hai dôzo.
- K: Arigatō. Gakusei-san desu ne.
- B: Hai, sengetsu kara Hitotsubashi Daigaku de kenkyû shite imasu.
- K: Sô desu ka. O-sumai wa Kunitachi desu ne.
- B: Hai, sô desu. Ima no tokoro wa ryô ni sunde imasu ga apâto o sagashite imasu.
- K: Naruhodo. Hai, kekkô desu.

CONVERSATION 8B

'What's on television?'

Mr Brown asks Mr Inoue if there's anything worth watching:

B: Terebi de nani o yatte imasu¹ ka.

I: Mite mimashō². Kuizu to ka dokumentarī to ka.
Omoshiroku nai bangumi bakari³ desu.

B: Kyō eiga wa yatte imasen ka.

I: Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Yatte imasen ne. Å,
jidaigeki wa yatte imasu yo.

B: Amari kyōmi (wa) nai desu⁴ ne.

I: Eigakan de wa Kurosawa no 'Shichinin no
Samurai' o yatte imasu yo. Shitte imasu ka.

B: Namae dake wa shitte imasu. Dare ga dete iru
n'desu ka.

I: Oboete imasen. Mifune ja nai desu ka.

B: Sō desu ka. Sore ja dō shimashtō. Mi ni ikimasu ka.

I: Ima sugu desu ka. Gohan mo tabenaide?⁵

B: Ikimashō. Sore de eiga ga owatte kara dokoka⁶ e
oishii mono de mo tabe ni ikimashō.

Notes:

1. kiite mite kudasai: 'ask and see', 'try asking'. See note 17, Chapter 6.
2. chotto ukagaimasu ga: 'I'd just like to ask you ...'; ukagau/ukagaimasu is a humble word meaning 'ask', 'visit', 'call on'.
3. Dai Ichi Kangin: abbreviation of Dai Ichi Kangyō Ginkō, the largest street bank in Japan.
4. komarimashita: 'That's a nuisance'; komaru/komarimasu = 'be stuck', 'be awkward'.
5. Nihongo: 'Japanese'; -go placed after the name of a country gives the language of that country, e.g. Chūgoku (China), Chūgokugo (Chinese). But 'English' is Eigo.
6. irassharu n'desu ka: the plain form with n'desu is a common alternative for masu, particularly in questions. See Chapter 9.
7. Gaijin tōrokushō: 'Alien registration card'; full name is Gaikokujin Tōroku Shōmeishō. The law requires that all non-naturalized foreigners in Japan for longer than 90 days must have and always carry one.
8. yatte imasu: yaru/yarimasu is a very common, if somewhat colloquial, alternative to suru/shimasu.
9. mite mimasu: 'I'll have a look and see'.
10. bakari: 'nothing but'.
11. kyōmi wa nai desu: 'I'm not interested', lit. 'as for interest, there isn't any'.
12. Gohan mo tabenaide: 'without even having a meal'; mo here means 'even'.
13. dokoka e: 'somewhere'; other indefinite expressions are studied in Chapter 14.

Chapter 9

MAIN POINTS:

Formation of the plain forms; some idiomatic usages of the plain forms: why ... because/probably/I wonder/may (be)/intend to/should

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Talking to Mrs Inoue; (b) 'My family'.

54 The plain form – Present

While in polite speech the main verb is best put in the **masu** form, the plain form does feature, for example, in subordinate clauses, in indirect speech and in a good number of idioms.

For such purposes, we must consider the formation of the various plain forms of Group 1, Group 2 and Irregular verbs. The present positive plain forms of all verbs are listed in the vocabularies together with the **masu** form. The present negative plain form you have already come across (refer to Chapter 7).

55 The Plain form – Past positive (the *ta* form)

All verbs (with the one exception given below) have their past positive plain form (the so-called **ta** form) made by changing the **te** (or **de**) of the **te** form to **ta** (or **da**).

Plain form (present)	te form	ta form
taberu (tabemasu)	tabete	tabeta
miru (mimasu)	mite	mita
kau (kaimasu)	katte	katta
kuru (kimasu)	kite	kita

The one verb whose **ta** form is irregular is **da/desu**. Its plain form (present) is **da**, its **te** form is **de** and its **ta** form is **datta**.

Check you can form the **ta** forms of the following:

taberu (tabemasu)	→	tabeta
yobu (yobimasu)		yonda
kaku (kakimasu)		kaita
arau (araimasu)		aratta
tatsu (tachimasu)		tatta
da (desu)		datta
iku (ikimasu)		itta
kaeru (kaerimasu)		kaetta
kaeru (kaemasu)		kaeta

55a The plain form – Past negative

This is made from the present negative. To form the plain past negative, change **nai** to **nakatta**: **inai** → **inakatta**; **konai** → **konakatta**.

Check you can form the past negative plain forms of the following:

shinai	→	shinakatta
matanai		matanakatta
kawanai		kawanakatta
kirinai		iranakatta
kaeranai		kaeranakatta
ikanai		ikanakatta

N.B. The **te iru/imasu** forms are changed into the plain form, as one would expect, by the appropriate plain forms of **iru/imasu**. Check the plain forms of the following:

tabete imasu	→	tabete iru
owatte imasen		owatte inai
yasunde imashita		yasunde ita
nete imasen deshita		nete inakatta

The remainder of this chapter is given over to considering some of the idiomatic uses of the plain forms.

56 'Why ...?' 'Because ...' (i)

In questions, especially 'why' questions, the plain form of a verb or adjective followed by *n'desu* (or *no desu* in its less common unabbreviated form) is best. 'Why' is either *naze* or *dōshite*. *N'desu* has the literal meaning 'it is because', 'the thing is':

A: *Why don't you go abroad?*

Dōshite kaigai e ikanai
n'desu ka.

B: *(Because) I don't have any money.*

Okane ga nai *n'desu.*

A: *Why are you crying?*

Naze naite iru *n'desu ka.*

B: *(Because) my leg really hurts.*

Ashi ga sugoku itai *n'desu.*

The plain forms of verbs and adjectives are used with *n'desu* not only in questions and answers. Generally *n'desu* has an explanatory or emphatic role, although sometimes it may simply serve to relieve the monotony of too many *masu* forms:

(The thing is) I've got work to do. Shigoto ga aru *n'desu.*

(You see) he's got no money. O-kane ga nai *n'desu.*

If the verb before *n'desu* is *da/desu* or a *na* adjective, then, in the present positive, *na* (not *da*) must come before *n'desu*:

The fact is, it's no good.
He's a friend of mine, you see.

Dame nan'desu.
Tomodachi nan'desu.

57 'Why ...?' 'Because ...' (ii)

'Because' or 'so' may be either *kara* or *no de* (the *te* form of *no desu*), the only difference being that even in polite speech *no de* is often preceded by a plain form, while in polite speech *kara* is generally preceded by the *masu* form:

It's got late so I'm going to take my leave of you in a minute.

It was my wife's birthday last week so we ate out.

Osoku natta no de mō
sorosoro kaerimasu.

Senshū wa kanai no tanjōbi
deshita kara gaishoku
shimashita.

Note, however:

As it's no good I'm going to throw it away.

I invited her because she's a friend of mine.

Dame na no de sutemasu.

Tomodachi na no de shōtai
shita *n'desu.*

Exercise 14

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Why did you buy two new suitcases? 'Because I'm going abroad next week.'
- 2 'The thing is we got back late.' 'Why's that?'
- 3 I've given up Japanese, you see.
- 4 Why didn't you come?
- 5 She's crying because her boyfriend has gone back to America.

58 Idiomatic expressions (i)

Deshō (plain form darō) means 'probably', and is often found with adverbs like tabun (perhaps) and osoraku (presumably):

He presumably won't come tomorrow.

Osoraku ashita konai deshō.

They've probably finished now.

Tabun mō owatta deshō.

He's probably asleep.

Tabun nete iru deshō.

With rising intonation deshō has a meaning almost identical to ne:

You'll be going too, won't you? Anata mo iku deshō.

There aren't any more, are there? Mō nai deshō.

Deshō cannot be preceded by da:

He's probably a policeman.

Ano hito wa keisatsukan deshō.

It's tomorrow, isn't it?

Ashita deshō.

Deshō ka (ne) means 'I wonder if/whether':

I wonder if they'll come.

Kuru deshō ka ne.

I wonder whether they're up.

Okite iru deshō ka.

With a question word such as 'who', the meaning is 'I wonder who ...':

I wonder who wrote it?

Dare ga kaita deshō ka ne.

I wonder where they bought it?

Doko de katta deshō ka ne.

59 Idiomatic expressions (ii)

Ka mo shiremasen attached to a plain form or to a noun translates 'may possibly be'. It is often used with adverbs like hyotto suru to or moshi ka suru to ('maybe'):

They may not sell it in this shop. Kono o-mise de utte inai ka mo shiremasen.

She may be pretty but she's not my cup of tea. Kanojo wa kirei ka mo shiremasen ga watashi no shumi ja nai desu.

She may possibly be Japanese. Hyotto suru to Nihonjin ka mo shiremasen.

60 Idiomatic expressions (iii)

Tsumori da/desu translates 'intend to' or 'mean to', and yotei da/desu translates 'plan to'. The negatives of both forms are tsumori wa nai/arimasen and yotei wa nai/arimasen:

A: When do you intend to go to Japan? Itsu Nihon e iku tsumori desu ka.

B: I don't intend going this year. Kotoshi wa iku tsumori wa nai desu.

I meant to phone but I forgot! Denwa suru tsumori deshita ga wasureta n'desu.

When do you plan to publish it? Itsu shuppan suru yotei desu ka.

61 Idiomatic expressions (iv)

In English 'should' and 'ought' may either suggest an obligation or they can simply suggest expectation, as in 'It's gone nine o'clock, so the shop ought to be open by now'. Beki (ja nai) is used for the former:

You shouldn't say that. Sonna koto, o iu beki ja nai desu.

I should have written it in Japanese. Nihongo de kaku beki deshita.

Hazu is used in the second of the meanings. It may also translate 'expected to', 'due to' and 'supposed to':

It's nine o'clock so the shop ought to be open now.

The plane is due to arrive at about six o'clock.

We were supposed to go too but the car broke down.

Kuji ni natta no de o-mise ga aite iru hazu desu.

Hikōki wa rokuji goro tsuku hazu desu.

Watashitachi mo iku hazu deshita ga kuruma ga koshō shita n'desu.

Compare the following:

The meeting was due to (was supposed to) finish at six o'clock.

Kaigi wa rokuji ni owaru hazu deshita.

The meeting is supposed to have finished at six o'clock.

Kaigi wa rokuji ni owatta hazu desu.

The negative form is hazu ga (wa) nai/arimasen:

They're not due to finish yet.

Mada owaru hazu ga nai desu.

Exercise 15

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I suppose they've finished now?
- 2 We were planning to leave Japan tomorrow.
- 3 They may come tomorrow.
- 4 A book like that shouldn't be expensive, you know.
- 5 I meant to tell you but I forgot.

CONVERSATION 9A

Talking to Mrs Inoue

Brown (B) arrives for the first time at his friend Kunio's house, but as Kunio isn't back from his sports club yet, he is invited in by Mrs Inoue (I), who chats to him:

B: Konnichi wa, Inoue-san no o-taku' desu ka.

I: Hai, sō desu ga, Buraun-san de irasshaimasu ka.

B: Hai, sō desu ga.

I: O-machi shite orimashita[†]. Kunio wa mō sugu kaette kuru hazu desu no de dōzo o-agari kudasai.

B: O-jama shimasu. Kunio-san wa kurabu katsudō ka nanika[‡] de osoku nattā n'desu ka.

I: Sō nan' [§] desu. Mōshi-wake arimasen ne ... Buraun-san, kochira e dōzo, Tsumetai o-nomimono de mo o-mochi shimashō[¶] ka.

B: O-negai shimasu.

Several moments later she returns:

I: Hai, mugicha dake desu ga dōzo.

B: A, arigatō gozaimasu. Tsumetakute oishii desu ne.

I: Buraun-san wa ato dore gurai Nihon ni irassharu yotei desu ka.

B: Sō desu ne, yoku wakarimasen ga, moshi kā suru to ato ichinen gurai iru ka mo shiremasen. O-kane shidal[§] desu.

I: Nanika go-kenkyū nasatte iru' n'desu ka.

B: Hai, anō[¶] kindaishi desu ga.

I: A sō desu ka. Buraun-san wa dōshite Nihon no koto ni kyōmi o mochihajimeta' n'desu ka.

B: Sō desu ne, sore wa chotto fukuzatsu nan desu ga chichi^{||} no eikyō ga atta kara desu ne.

CONVERSATION 9B

'My family'

Kunio (K) comes home, and together they talk of their families:

K: Tadaima.

I: O-kaeri nasai. O-kyaku-sama ga irasshatte iru no yo¹¹.

K: Buraun-san, osoku natte gomen nasai. Mō chotto matte kudasai. Ima kigaete kimasu kara ... o-kā-san! O-tō-san wa?

I: O-tō-san wa mada kaette inai no yo. Hayaku kigaete 'rasshai'¹² ... Buraun-san wa go-kyōdai wa nannin desu ka.

B: Kyōdai wa sannin¹³ de wafashi wa jinan¹⁴ desu.

I: Otoko bakari¹⁵ desu ka.

B: Hai, sō desu. Ani hitori to otōto hitori desu.

I: A, sō desu ka. O-nisan wa nani o shite irassharu n'desu ka.

B: Ani mo otōto mo kōkūgaisha ni tsutomete imasu. Futaritomo rainen Nihon ni kuru ka mo shirenai n'desu.

I: Sō desu ka. Sore wa tanoshimi desu¹⁶ ne. Goryōshin mo itsuka Nihon ni irassharu¹⁷ n'deshō.

B: Dō deshō ka. Chichi wa kuru ka mo shiremase ga haha wa chotto muri desu ne. Hikōki ga kowakute ...

K: O-matase. Nan no hanashi desu ka.

I: Buraun-san no go-kyōdai no hanashi o shite ita no yo.

Notes:

1. o-taku: 'house'; o-taku is a polite word for ie. As an adjective o-taku no ... can mean 'your ...'.
2. O-machi shite orimashita: 'I was waiting for (expecting) you'; the stem of the verb preceded by o- and followed by suru/shimasu is one way to make the verb humble. (See Chapter 20.) Note throughout this conversation and the next, that Mrs Inoue, typically of women, uses very polite language to her guest.
3. ka nanika: 'or something or other'.
4. sō nan'desu: emphatic form of sō desu, 'that's right'; remember that na and not da comes before n'desu.
5. O-mochi shimashō ka: 'Shall I bring ...'; see above, note 2.
6. O-kane shidai desu: 'It depends on the money' ... cf. tenki shidai, 'it depends on the weather' and anata shidai, 'it depends on you'.
7. go-kenkyū nasatte iru n'desu ka: 'are you researching (into) something?'; nasaru/nasaimasu is an honorific form of suru/shimasu, and go- is added to certain words to make them honorific (see Chapter 20).
8. anō: 'umm'.
9. mochihajimeta: 'begin to have an interest in'; replace masu with hajimeru/hajimemasu to mean 'begin to' (cf. kenkyū shihajimeru, 'begin to research').
10. chichi: 'my father'; in Japanese two different family terms have to be distinguished - (a) plain terms, (b) polite terms. The plain terms are used for referring to one's own family members; the polite terms are used for referring to others' family members. Those polite terms marked with an asterisk in the table below are also used in addressing one's own family members:

Plain	Polite	
father	chichi	o-tō-san*
mother	haha	o-kā-san*
parents	ryōshin	go-ryōshin
husband	shujin	go-shujin
wife	kanai	oku-san
brothers/sisters	kyōdai	go-kyōdai

older brother	ani	o-ni-san*
older sister	ane	o-nē-san*
younger brother	otōto	otōto-san
younger sister	imōto	imōto-san
son	musuko	musuko-san
daughter	musume	musume-san
grandfather	sofu	o-jī-san
grandmother	sobo	o-bā-san
uncle	oji	oji-san
aunt	oba	oba-san

Note that **oji-san** and **oba-san** are also, respectively, informal words for 'man' and 'woman'.

11. **irasshatte iru no yo:** **no yo** is characteristic of women's speech; **irasshatte iru** (honorific for **kite iru**) is used out of deference for Mr Brown; the plain form ending is used because mother is speaking to son.
12. **'rasshai:** 'go and get changed'; an abbreviation of **irasshai**, the imperative of **irassharu/irasshaimasu**. The use of **rasshai** is characteristic of women's speech.
13. **kyōdal wa sannin:** 'I've got two brothers'; in Japan the speaker includes him/herself when counting numbers of brothers/sisters.
14. **jinan:** 'second son'; **chōnan** is 'eldest son', **chōjo** is 'eldest daughter', **jijo** is 'second daughter'.
15. **otoko bakari:** 'nothing but boys'.
16. **tanoshimi desu:** 'that's something to look forward to'; **tanoshimi** literally means 'enjoyment'.
17. **Nihon ni irassharu n'deshō:** 'they'll be coming to Japan, won't they?'. N.B. **irassharu/irasshaimasu** is the honorific form of both **iku/ikimasu** and **iru/imasu**, as well as **kuru/kimasu**. See Chapter 20.

Chapter 10

MAIN POINTS:

Verbs of giving and receiving; doing things for people; having things done.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) 'What shall we buy for him?' (b) 'Happy Birthday!'

62 Verbs of giving and receiving

Verbs of giving and receiving can appear rather complex at first, since the verb you use will depend on your understanding of the relationship between the giver and the receiver. For example, if you are either doing the giving or at the time of speaking 'feel closer' to the giver than the receiver, for whatever reason (the giver may be your relative or friend), then one verb will be used. If, however, someone else is giving to you, or to someone with whom you identify more closely than with the giver, then another verb will be used. In practice, this is not as complex as it sounds! It is important, though, to take care with verbs of giving and receiving as impoliteness can result from misuse.

63 Verbs of giving (i)

Both **sashiageru/sashiagemasu** and **ageru/agemasu** mean 'give'. They often have 1st person (I/we) subjects and may also have 2nd person (you), and 3rd person (he/she/they) subjects but only if, at the time of speaking, you identify more closely with the giver than the receiver.

For example, they will therefore be used if you were saying that you or your friend gave to someone else or that you or a member of your family gave to a member of another family, or that you or a member of your company gave to a member of another company.

The difference between *sashiageru/sashiagemasu* and *ageru/agemasu* is that the former is more respectful: *sashiageru/sashiagemasu* will therefore be used if you deem the receiver to be of higher status than the giver, or if, for whatever reason, you wish to show special respect to the receiver.

Ageru/agemasu is used when you deem the receiver to be either of lower status than or equal status to the giver. *Ageru/agemasu* may also be used when the receiver is of higher status than the giver provided that the receiver is not actually present, and provided that there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown. As will be seen from the first example below, it's not normally thought necessary to use the more respectful forms when referring to (or addressing) members of one's own family.

Study very carefully the following examples, noting the speaker-giver-receiver relationships, and note too the difference between those sentences marked (a) and those marked (b): (b) rather than (a) should be used if you are speaking in the presence of the Professor himself or to his wife, or a colleague of his, all of whom would expect respect to be shown:

I'll give this to my mother.
I'll give it to you, Sir.

(a) *I'll give it to the Professor.*
(b) *I'll give it to the Professor.*

(a) *Kunio gave it to the Professor.*
(b) *Kunio gave it to the Professor.*

Haha ni kore o agemasu.
*Sensei, kore o
sashiagemasu.*

Sensei ni agemasu.
Sensei ni sashiagemasu.

*Kunio wa sensei ni
agemashita.*
*Kunio wa sensei ni
sashiagemashita.*

Kunio gave Yumiko the paper.

*Kunio, did you give Yumiko the
paper?*

*Kunio wa Yumiko ni
shinbun o agemashita.*
*Kunio, Yumiko ni shinbun
o agemashita ka.*

In these last two examples, both Kunio and Yumiko are acquaintances of yours, but the use of *ageru/agemasu* indicates that you identify more closely with Kunio than with Yumiko.

64 Verbs of giving (ii)

Both *kudasaru/kudasaimasu* and *kureru/kuremasu* mean 'give', but they can never be used with a 1st person (I/we) subject. They are often used with 1st person indirect objects (i.e. when someone gives to me/us) and may be used with 2nd and 3rd person indirect objects (to you, to him/her/them) but only if you identify more closely with the receiver than the giver. For example, you could use them if you were saying that someone else gave to you or a friend of yours or that a member of another family gave to you or a member of your family, or that a member of another company gave to you or a member of your company.

Kudasaru/kudasaimasu is more respectful than *kureru/kuremasu*, so you should use *kudasaru/kudasaimasu* if you deem the giver to be of superior status to the receiver or if, for whatever reason, you wish to show special respect to the giver.

Kureru/kuremasu is used when you deem the giver to be of similar status to or of lower status than the receiver. You may also use it when the giver is of superior status to the receiver if the giver is not present and if there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown to the giver. Study this selection of examples:

My mother gave this to me.
Kunio, will you give this to me?
Professor, will you give me this?

Did Kunio give this to you?
(a) *The Professor gave it to me.*
(b) *The Professor gave it to me.*

As in the preceding section, example (a) you might say to a friend or fellow student, but you should use (b) if the Professor himself or his wife or colleague was present at the time or if you were addressing yourself to his wife or a colleague of his.

In the final example below, both Kunio and Yumiko are acquaintances of yours, but the use of *kureru/kuremasu* (as opposed to *ageru/agemasu*) indicates that you feel much closer to Yumiko than you do to Kunio:

Kunio gave this to Yumiko.

Kunio, did you give this to Yumiko?

Haha ga kuremashita.
Kunio, kore o kuremasu ka.
Sensei, kore o kudasaimasu ka.
Kunio ga kureta n'desu ka.
Sensei ga kuremashita.
Sensei ga kudasaimashita.

I got a letter from Kunio.

- (a) *I got a letter from the President.*
(b) *I got a letter from the President.*

Did you get a letter from Kunio?

Kunio got a letter from Yumiko.

- (a) *He got a letter from the President.*
(b) *He got a letter from the President.*

Kunio kara tegami o moraimashita.
Shachō kara tegami o moraimashita.
Shachō kara tegami o itadakimashita.
Kunio kara tegami o moraimashita ka.
Kunio wa Yumiko kara tegami o moraimashita.
Shachō ni tegami o moraimashita.
Shachō ni tegami o itadakimashita.

Again, (a) in each case you may say to a friend or colleague, but (b) would be preferred if the company President himself were present or you were speaking to or in the presence of his wife or a colleague of his.

In practice, you may well find that Japanese tend to use *morau/moraimasu* and *itadaku/itadakimasu* more than *kureru/kuremasu* and *utasaru/kudasaimasu*. That is, they may well prefer to say *kare ni moraimashita* ('I received it from him') rather than *kare ga kuremashita* ('he gave it to me').

65 Verbs of receiving

Itadaku/itadakimasu and *morau/moraimasu* both mean 'receive' / 'be given' and may have 1st, 2nd or 3rd person subjects. The difference between them is that *itadaku/itadakimasu* is more respectful. It is used when you deem the receiver to be of humbler status than the giver, or when you wish to show special respect to the giver.

Morau/moraimasu will be used when you deem the receiver to be of equal status to or superior status than the giver. You may also use it when the receiver is of inferior status than the giver, provided that the giver is not actually present and provided that there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown. Study the following examples, and note that the person from whom something is received may be followed by either *ni* or *kara*:

Exercise 16

Put into Japanese:

- 1 My mother gave me this for my birthday.
- 2 Professor, I'll give you this.
- 3 The President got a book from his wife.
- 4 Tom (i.e. my colleague), I'll give you this.
- 5 Did Yumiko give Kunio a present?

66 Having things done/doing things for others

The verbs for receiving and giving are used with the te form of verbs to mean 'having things done' and 'doing things for others' respectively. Basically the same rules apply to the use of these constructions as to the use of the verbs of receiving and giving when used alone.

66a Having things done

The te form of a verb followed by *itadaku/itadakimasu* and *morau/moraimasu* means 'have something done' or 'get somebody to do something'. The person who is made to perform the action (the agent) is followed by *ni*. Note that both forms may either mean 'get somebody to do something', or 'someone was kind enough to do something for (me)'. Study the following examples:

I got my brother to help.

Otōto ni tetsudatte moraimashita.

I got the teacher to explain.

Sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita (or itadakimashita).

Did you get Kunio to help?

Kunio ni tetsudatte moraimashita ka.

Did you get the teacher to explain?

Sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita ka (or itadakimashita ka).

Kunio got Yumiko to help.

Kunio wa Yumiko ni tetsudatte moraimashita.

Kunio got the teacher to explain.

Kunio wa sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita (or itadakimashita).

67 Doing things for others (i)

Te kudasaru/kudasaimasu and *te kureru/kuremasu* both mean '(be kind enough to) do something for somebody'. The recipient of the action is followed by *ni*. Consider the following examples:

Kunio, would you pass the salt? *Kunio, shio o totte kuremasu ka.*

Teacher, will you explain this to me? *Sensei, kore o setsumei shite kudasaimasu ka.*
Did Kunio help you? *Kunio wa tetsudatte kuremashita ka.*

Did the teacher explain it to you? *Sensei wa setsumei shite kuremashita ka (or kudasaimashita ka).*

Kunio helped Yumiko. *Kunio ga Yumiko o tetsudatte kuremashita.*

68 Doing things for others (ii)

Te ageru/agemasu means 'do something for others'. You are advised to exercise caution over its usage, however. Unless you are speaking to a very close friend or a child, it's best to avoid using *te ageru/agemasu* as this can sound patronizing. (N.B. When you are speaking to a child or a very close friend you are likely to be using the plain form.) Study the following examples:

I'll help you, Kunio.
Did you help Yumiko?

Kunio helped Yumiko.

Kunio, tetsudatte ageru yo.
Yumiko o tetsudatte ageta ka.

Kunio wa Yumiko o tetsudatte ageta.

69 Doing things for others (iii)

There are two ways of saying such sentences as 'Professor, shall I help you?', and 'Kunio bought it for the Professor'. One is simply to use the **masu** form alone:

Professor, shall I help you?
Kunio bought it for the Professor.
Shall I make some tea?

Sensei, tetsudaimashō ka.
Kunio wa sensei ni kaimashita.
O-cha o iremashō ka.

The other (more respectful) way is to use a humble form of the verb. Certain verbs have humble alternatives. Learn the following:

	<i>Normal</i>	<i>Humble</i>
do	suru/shimasu	itasu/itashimasu
go	iku/ikimasu	mairu/mairimasu
come	kuru/kimasu	mairu/mairimasu
say	iu/iimasu	mōsu/mōshimasu

Most verbs which have no humble alternatives can be made humble as follows:

oshiemasu → oshie → o-oshie shimasu
misuru → mise → o-mise shimasu

Professor, shall I help? Sensei, o-tetsudai shimashō ka.
My brother will show you the photos. Otōtō ga shashin o o-mise shimasu.
Shall I ask (on your behalf)? O-kiki shimashō ka.

Exercise 17

Put into Japanese:

- I'll buy it for you, Kunio.
- Would you be kind enough to write your name here?
- I'll get him to come at six o'clock.
- Kunio got the Professor to pay.
- The President bought it for my wife.

CONVERSATION 10A

'What shall we buy for him?'

Two of Mr Brown's female students, Akiko (A) and Tomoko (T), who are good friends, discuss what to buy him for his birthday.

- A: Asatte wa Buraun-sensei no tanjōbi deshō.
Purezento demo agemashō ka.
- T: Sō ne¹. Nani ga ii kashira².
- A: Nihonteki³ na mono ga ii n'ja nai? Sensu to ka furoshiki to ka.
- T: Sō ne. Kōkōjidai no tomodachi ga Mitsukoshi⁴ de baito shite iru kara nanika ii mono⁵ o sagashite moraimashō ka. Asoko wa nandemo takai kedo sukoshi yasuku shite kureru ka mo shirenai wa⁶.

CONVERSATION 10B

'Happy Birthday!'

Chieko, Yumiko, Kunio and the Inoues all (= mina, M) come to Mr Brown's party:

K: Buraun-san ni kanpai shimashō ... Kanpai!

M: Kanpai! Kanpai!

K: Tanjōbi o-medetō gozaimasu*.

M: O-medetō gozaimasu.

K: Chotto supīchi demo shite kudasai yo,
Buraun-sensei!

B: Supīchi desu ka. Sore ja, mina-san kyō wa kite
kudasatte' hontō ni arigatō gozaimasu. Konna
suteki na tanjōbi pātei wa hajimete desu. Oishii
go-chisō o tsukutte itadaite, hontō ni arigatō
gozaimasu. Suteki na purezento mo dōmo arigatō.

K: Purezento wa nani o moratta n'desu ka.

B: Sensu to furoshiki to hon desu. Sensu wa Chieko-
san kara, soshite furoshiki wa Kunio to Yumiko-
san kara desu. Hon wa Inoue-san-tachiⁱⁱ ni
itadakimashita.

K: Tokoro de Buraun-san wa kyō ikutsu ni natta
n'desu ka.

B: Sore wa himitsu desu yo.

Notes:

1. **Sō ne:** familiar form of **sō desu ne**. Since Akiko and Tomoko are good friends, they use familiar Japanese, including some plain forms.
2. **kashira:** **kashira** here and **wa** below are characteristic of women's speech.
3. **Nihonteki:** 'Japanese': there is a large group of **na** adjectives formed by adding **teki** to nouns, e.g. **seiji** (politics), **seijiteki** (political); **keizai** (economics), **keizaiteki** (economic, economical).
4. **Mitsukoshi:** One of Japan's best-known department stores.
5. **nanika ii mono:** 'something nice'; **nanika** = 'something', see Chapter 14.
6. **tanjōbi o-medetō gozaimasu:** 'Happy Birthday'; **o-medetō gozaimasu** is used to congratulate on many different occasions, e.g. **akemashite o-medetō gozaimasu**, 'Happy New Year'.
7. **kite kudasatte arigatō gozaimasu:** 'Thank you for coming'; it is also possible to say **-te itadaite arigatō gozaimasu**.
8. **Inoue-san-tachi:** 'the Inoues'; **tachi** is a plural suffix.

Chapter 11

MAIN POINTS:

Indirect speech; indirect statements; indirect questions and commands; miscellaneous expressions.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A Japanese inn; (b) A beer garden

70 Indirect statements

When quoting what someone says, thinks, replies etc., the 'quotative particle' *to* must be used. Consider the examples, noting the different word order:

'It's six o'clock,' their mother said.

I said 'Good night'.

'I'm going to bed,' she said.

'Mō rokuji desu' to okāsan ga iimashita.

Watashi wa 'o-yasumi-nasai' to iimashita.

'Nemasu' to kanojo wa iimashita.

Here, the exact words the speaker used have been translated. A more common type of sentence is perhaps that where we relate indirectly what someone says (indirect speech) or thinks. There are a few rules to remember:

(1) The verb which precedes *to* is in the plain form.

I think he'll be home soon.

Mō kaette kuru to omoimasu.

(2) As a rule, the *te imasu* form of *iu/iimasu* and *omou/omoimasu* is used with 3rd person subjects.

He says (that) he doesn't know.

Kare wa shiranai to itte imasu.

(3) Note that Japanese uses different tenses to English.

I said I wouldn't go (J: I will not go, I said).

He said it was interesting (J: It is interesting, he said).

I thought it had finished (J: It has finished, I thought).

Watashi wa ikanai to iimashita.

Omoshiroi to kare wa iimashita.

Mō owatta to omoimashita.

71 Indirect questions

Indirect questions are sentences such as 'I asked what ...', 'Tell me when ...', 'Do you know why ...', 'Have you decided where ...'. Note once again the tenses:

Shall I ask what time it gets here? (J: What time does it get here? Shall I ask?)

Tell me where he lives. (J: Where does he live? Tell me.)

Do you know why he left the company? (J: Why did he leave the company? Do you know?)

He asked why there wasn't any more beer. (J: Why isn't there any more beer? he asked.)

Nanji ni tsuku ka o-kiki shimashō ka.

Doko ni sunde iru ka oshiete kudasai.

Naze kaisha o yameta ka shitte imasu ka.

Dōshite bīru ga mō nai ka kikimashita.

Sentences such as 'Do you know whether (if) ...', are also of this sort,

'... whether ... or not ...' requires ... ka dō ka ...

I didn't know whether or not you eat sashimi.

I don't yet know whether I'll go to Japan or not.

Sashimi o taberu ka dō ka shirimasesen deshita.

Nihon e iku ka dō ka mada wakarimasen.

Da/desu after nouns or na adjectives in the present tense is usually dropped:

I'll ask when it is.

Itsu ka kikimasu.

Do you know where it is?

Doko ka shitte imasu ka.

'I think probably ... (I'm pretty sure)' is translated by n'ja nai ka to omoimasu, or nan ja nai ka to omimasu with na adjectives and nouns:

I'm pretty sure we'll be on time. Ma ni au n'ja nai ka to omoimasu.

I think it'll probably be O.K. Daijōbu nan ja nai ka to omoimasu.

72 Indirect commands

Indirect commands such as 'I told him not to go' may be translated in a number of ways. The first is with kudasai or its plain form kure (kure is less polite and will be used when the speaker says what he himself or someone of lower status was told to do):

We asked them to come early.
(J: Please come early,
we asked.)

Hayaku kite kudasai to tanomimashita.

I told him not to go.
He told me to help.

Ikanaide kure to iimashita.
Tetsudatte kure to kare wa watashi ni iimashita.

The second involves yō ni (lit. 'in such a way that') iu/iimasu or tanomu/tanomimasu:

I told him not to go.
We asked them to come early.

Ikanai yō ni iimashita.
Hayaku kuru yō ni tanomimashita.

If the person told or asked to perform the action is of superior status, then te kureru (or the even more polite te kudasaru) yō ni may be used:

I asked the Professor to come at six o'clock.

My wife asked the Professor to help.

Sensei ni rokuji goro kite kureru yō ni tanomimashita.

Kanai ga sensei ni tetsudatte kureru yō ni tanomimashita.

Exercise 18

Put into Japanese:

- Ask him whether he knows where they live.
- Would you be kind enough to tell me where they live?
- We asked him to be here by lunchtime, but he said he'd be here by four o'clock.
- The teacher told the students to stand up.
- Did he ask her why she's going to give up Japanese?

73 'Call A, B'

'Call A, B' is A o (or wa) B to iimasu.

A: What do you call this yellow thing?

B: We call it 'takewan'.

Note the following:

How do you say 'I love you' in Japanese?

Kono kiroi no wa nan to iimasu ka.

Takuan to iimasu.

'I love you' wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.

74 'An A called B', 'the fact that A means B'

'An A called B' is B to iu A. Consider the following:

A singer called Nakajima Miyuki ...

The film called 'Ran' ...

The Japanese word 'ai' ...

Nakaiima Miyuki to iu kashu ga ...

'Ran' to iu eiga wa ...

Ai to iu Nihongo no kotoba wa ...

Nouns and adjectives may be followed by to iu no wa or to iu koto wa (the latter is only for abstract things) sometimes in the sense of 'what I mean by ...', 'what is meant by ...', but often with no extra meaning at all:

Japanese (J: as for what we call Japanese) is interesting, you know.

Kanji are difficult to remember, aren't they?

Nihongo to iu no wa omoshiroi desu yo.

Kanji to iu no wa oboenikui desu ne.

When to iu koto wa follows a verb or adjective it often conveys '(the fact) that':

Did you know that he's left the company?

I heard that she's getting married.

Kaisha o yameta to iu koto o shitte imashita ka.

Kanojo ga kekkon suru to iu koto o kikimashita.

'The fact that ... means that ...' may be translated by ... to iu koto (or no) wa ... to iu koto (or imi) desu:

The fact that the light's on means he's back home now.

Denki ga tsuite iru to iu koto wa kare ga mō kaette kita to iu koto desu.

'That' in sentences such as 'the news that', 'the view that', 'a request that', etc. is translated with to iu:

Did you hear the news that there had been a terrible earthquake?

There was a call (saying) that he'd arrived.

Sugoi jishin ga atta to iu nyūsu o kikimashita ka.

Tōchaku shita to iu denwa ga arimashita.

Note how to ask 'what does A mean?':

A: What does the word 'shuto' mean?

B: It means 'capital city'.

Shuto (to iu kotoba) wa dō iu imi desu ka.

'Capital city' to iu imi desu yo.

75 Another word on to omoimasu

'I'm thinking of ...', 'I think I shall ...', 'I thought I would ...' are expressions which require the plain forms of the mashō ending in combination with to omoimasu.

Verbs in Group 1 have this plain form made in the following way:

taberu → tabeyō
miru → miyō

Verbs in Group 2 have this form made by changing the final syllable (e.g. -u, -ku, gu, -su, -tsu, -nu etc.) to -ō, -kyō, -gō, -sō, -tō, -nō etc.:

kaku → kakō
matsu → matō
arau → araō

The irregular verbs are:

suru → shiyō
kuru → koyō
da → darō

Check you can form the plain forms of the following:

ikimashō	→	ikō
deshō	→	darō
sagashimashō	→	sagasō
haraimashō	→	haraō
demashō	→	deyō
kaerimashō	→	kaerō
kaemashō	→	kaeyō

Consider these examples, and note that *ka* adds the idea of 'perhaps', 'might':

I was thinking of giving up whisky.

Uisuki o yameyō to omotte mashita.

I think I'll buy a radio.

Rajio o kaō to omoimasu.

I'm thinking I might go via Korea.

Kankoku keiyu de ikō ka to omotte imasu.

I think I'll perhaps go to bed now.

Mō neyō ka to omoimasu.

Exercise 19

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'What does the word *hakubutsukan* mean?'
'It means museum.'
- 2 He was going out with her for a long time and then I heard they were getting married.
- 3 I'm thinking of perhaps coming back next year.
- 4 They said that they wouldn't come.
- 5 'What did you say?' I said 'I'm tired and I'm going to bed.'
- 6 The fact that he hasn't phoned yet doesn't mean that he's had an accident, you know.

CONVERSATION 11A

A traditional Japanese inn

Shortly after arriving in Japan Mr Brown (B) makes his first visit with Mr Inoue (I) to a 'ryokan', where they are met by the owner's wife (R):

I: Gomen kudasai.

R: Hai! Irasshaimase.

I: Sumimasen, heywa arimasu ka.

R: O-futari-sama de gozaimasu ne. Hai, gozaimasu.
Go-ippaku de gozaimasu ka.

I: Hai, sō desu.

R: Dōzo o-agari kudasai. O-heya e go-annai
itashimasu.

*They are taken to their room and wait for tea to be brought.
Mr Inoue points to a low table in the middle of the room:*

I: Buraun-san, kore wa nan to iu ka shitte imasu ka.

B: Oboete imasen.

I: Kore wa kotatsu to itte, shita ni hīta ga tsuite iru
n'desu. Attakakute totomo kimochi ga ii n'desu.
Dōzo suwatte ashi o nobashite kudasai.

Mr Brown points to the sliding paper door:

B: Inoue-san, ano doa wa fusuma to iimasu ka shōji
to iimasu ka. Dotchi ga dotchi ka mata
wasuremashita.

I: Are wa fusuma desu yo. Shikashi, Nihonma de
ichiban omoshiroi no wa² Buraun-san no ushiro ni
aru n'desu. Tokonomo to iu tokoro desu yo. Asoko
ni kakejiku toka hana toka o oku n'desu.

B: Sō desu ka. Suteki desu ne. Kakejiku wa 'scroll' to
iu imi deshita ne.



I: Sō desu. Shikashi kono kakejiku ni nan to kaite aru no ka watashi ni sappari wakarimasen'. Ji ga furukute totomo yominikui desu ne.

R: Shitsurei shimasu!

CONVERSATION 11B

A beer garden

Mr Murata (M) is waiting at a beer garden for Mr Brown (B) and others to appear:

B: Osoku natte mōshiwake naj desu. Basho (o) shitte iru ka to omotta n'desu ga kekkyoku wakaranakute keisatsukan ni oshiete moratta n'desu.

M: Warukatta desu¹ ne.

B: Tonde mo arimasen. Nakanaka ii tokoro desu ne. Inoue-san wa? Kuru to itte ita deshō.

M: N, kuji ni natta kara mō chotto de² kuru to omoimasu ga.

B: Yamamoto-san wa?

M: Yamamoto-san wa nē okā-san ga kinō nyūin shita no de kyō wa chotto muri³ nan ja nai ka to omoimasu yo.

B: Taihen desu ne. Katayama-san wa?

M: Iya, Katayama-san wa kaisha no yōji de osoku naru darō to itte imashita. Hataشite kuru ka dō ka wakarimasen ga.

B: Sō desu ka. Kinō watashi wa Sumisu-san ni kyō kuru yō ni itta n'desu ga kyō wa muri da to itte imashita yo!

M: Zannen desu ne. Jā, sannin dake de nomimashō!
To the waiter: Sumimasen! Biru o kudasai!

Notes:

1. Dotchi ga dotchi ka ...: 'I've forgotten which is which'; dotchi is an abbreviation of dochira.
2. de ichiban omoshiroi no wa: 'the most interesting thing in a Japanese room is ...'. Superlatives are dealt with in Chapter 16.
3. nan to kaite aru ka ...: 'I've no idea what is written on it'; te aru/arimasu is dealt with in Chapter 19.
4. Warukatta: here, it means 'I'm sorry'.
5. mō chotto de: 'in a moment', 'before long'.
6. muri: here, 'impossible'.

Chapter 12

MAIN POINTS:

like/dislike; want to do; want someone to do; more on *wa* and *ga*; more on *naru* and *narimasu*; more on *yō ni*

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Likes and dislikes; (b) 'What sports are you good at?'

76 'Like/dislike'

The *na* adjectives *suki* ('liked') and *kirai* ('disliked') are normally used in place of a verb. '*A* likes *B*' and '*A* dislikes *B*' are *A wa B ga suki desu* and *A wa B ga kirai desu*:

My wife likes jazz. (J: As for my wife, jazz is liked.)

I dislike manju.

Watashi wa manjū ga kirai desu.

The subject is omitted when the context makes clear who or what this is:

A: Do you like Japanese food? *Washoku ga suki desu ka.*
B: Yes, I do, very much. *Hai, totomo suki desu.*

'Really like' and 'really loathe' are *daisuki* and *daikirai* respectively. When referring to people one likes and dislikes *no koto ga* is often used:

You really like her, don't you? *Kanojo no koto ga daisuki desu ne.*
I really loathe that song. *Ano uta ga daikirai desu.*

In the negative, and when two things are being contrasted, and when replying to a question using *wa*, the object of the like or dislike may be followed by *wa* and not *ga*:

I don't like the rainy season in Japan. *Nihon no tsuyu wa suki ja arimasen.*

I like Japanese magazines, but I don't like Japanese comics. *Nihon no zasshi wa suki desu ga manga wa suki ja arimasen.*

A: What about some beer?

B: I don't like beer.

Both *suki* and *kirai* are *na* adjectives and can of course be placed before nouns:

... a drink which I (etc.) like (J: a liked drink) ...

... a person I don't like ...

... suki na nomimono ...

... kirai na hito ...

To clarify who is doing the liking in such expressions, add the pronoun plus *no*:

There is no food which I don't like.

What is the food he likes?

Watashi no kirai na tabemono wa nai desu.

Kare no suki na tabemono wa nan desu ka.

77 Some other *wa/ga* expressions

'*A* is good at *B*' and '*A* is bad at *B*' are *A wa B ga jōzu desu* and *A wa B ga heta desu*:

He was very good at the guitar.

Mrs Suzuki is not useless at singing.

Kare wa gitā ga totomo jōzu deshita.

Suzuki-san wa uta ga heta ja arimasen.

Jōzu and heta are both na adjectives and are to be found before nouns:

Sports he's good at are *judo* and baseball.

Languages she's not good at are French and German.

Kare no jōzu na spōtsu wa jūdō to yakyū desu.

Kanojo no heta na kotoba wa Furansugo to Doitsugo desu.

Other very common wa/ga constructions include wakaru/wakarimasu 'understand':

She understands Japanese well. (Kanojo wa) Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasu.

Do you understand the meaning of that joke? (Anata wa) sono jōdan no imi ga wakarimasu ka.

and dekiru/dekimasu 'can (do)':

Mr Suzuki's son can do kendo. Suzuki-san no musuko wa kendō ga dekimasu.

A: Can you do (speak) English? (Anata wa) Eigo ga dekimasu ka.

B: Just a little. Sukoshi dake dekimasu.

and, of course, aru/arimasu:

Have you got any money? (J: As for you, is there any money?) (Anata wa) o-kane ga arimasu ka.

I haven't got a ticket. Watashi wa kippu ga arimasen.

Note here that you can say either 'as for A, its B is ...', or 'A's B is ...'. Compare the following:

The cost of living in Tokyo is high.

Japan's population is great.

(a) Tōkyō wa bukka ga takai desu.

(a) Tōkyō no bukka wa takai desu.

(a) Nihon wa jinkō ga ōi desu.

(b) Nihon no jinkō wa ōi desu.

In all of the above, wa will generally replace ga when the word before ga is being contrasted with something else, when the sentence is negative, and when a reply is being made to a question which uses wa:

He's good at judo but he's not good at kendo. Jūdō wa jōzu desu ga kendō wa heta desu.

I can't speak Japanese, you know. Nihongo wa dekimasen yo.

A: What about the money?

B: I've got the money.

O-kane wa? O-kane wa arimasu yo.

78 'Want something'/'need something'

The adjective *hoshii* ('desired') is used for 'want something':

I want a cigarette. (J: As for me, a cigarette is desired.) Watashi wa tabako ga hoshii desu.

Do you want a bit more money? Mō sukoshi o-kane ga hoshii desu ka.

If the subject is a third person (he/she/they), *hoshii* is usually followed by *to itte iru/imasu* (*iimashita* in the past), or a word for 'seems' (see Chapter 13):

A: What does she want? Kanojo wa nani ga hoshii to itte imasu ka.

B: She doesn't want anything. Nanimō hoshiku nai to itte imasu.

Alternatively, the verb *hoshigaru/hoshigarimasu* may be used:

He doesn't want any money. O-kane wa hoshigatte imasen.

Hoshii can also be used before a noun:

Is there something you want (J: a desired thing)? Hoshii mono wa arimasu

I need some more time. (J: As for me, more time is necessary.) Watashi wa mō chotto jikan ga irimasu.

Don't you need that? Irimasen ka.

Often the meaning of *iru/irimasu* is close to 'want':

A: What about some tea?
B: I don't want any now.

Kōcha wa?
Ima wa irimasen.

Exercise 20

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Don't you like that song?' 'No, I really loathe it.'
- 2 'What sports is your brother good at?' 'He's good at baseball.'
- 3 She's got very pretty eyes.
- 4 I've got two children. What about you?
- 5 I can speak Japanese but I can't speak Korean yet.
- 6 I don't want that, so I'll give it to you.
- 7 She wants that expensive dress.
- 8 'Can you do it?' 'No, I can't. Would you (be kind enough to) ask him if he can?'

79 'Want to' (i)

'Want to' is made by adding *tai* to the stem of any verb. *Tai* works like an *i* adjective, and so its negative is *taku nai*. Check you can make the *tai* and *taku nai* forms of the following:

suru/shimasu	→	shitai	→	shitaku nai
oriru/orimasu		oritai		oritaku nai
kuru/kimasu		kitai		kitaku nai
kau/kaimasu		kaitai		kaitaku nai
iku/ikimasu		ikitai		ikitaku nai
kaeru/kaerimasu		kaeritai		kaeritaku nai
kaeru/kaemasu		kaetai		kaetaku nai

Now check you can form the past positive and negative of the following:

shita	→	shitakatta	→	shitaku nakatta
oritai		oritakatta		oritaku nakatta
owaritai		owaritakatta		owaritaku nakatta
kaitai		kaitakatta		kaitaku nakatta
kitai		kitakatta		kitaku nakatta
detai		detakatta		detaku nakatta
kaeritai		kaeritakatta		kaeritaku nakatta

The addition of *desu* or *n'desu* to these forms makes them polite:

We don't want to go home yet.
I didn't want to go by plane.

Mada kaeritaku nai desu.
Hikoki de ikitaku nakatta
desu.

I should like to open a bank
account.

Kōza o hirakitai n'desu ga.

Often the direct object of the *tai* form is followed not by *o*, but by *ga*:

Why do you want to read
yesterday's newspaper?
I wanted to buy that shirt.

Dōshite kinō no shinbun ga
yomitai n'desu ka.
Ano shatsu ga kaitakatta
desu.

An alternative to the polite *desu* ending is to *omoimasu* ('think that'). Its meaning is often close to 'would like to':

I would like to go to bed now.
Wouldn't you like to go out
somewhere?

Mō netai to omoimasu yo.
Dokoka e asobi ni ikitai to
omoimasesu ka.

80 'Want to' (ii)

A 3rd person subject generally requires either *to itte* *iru/imasu* or *deshō* (or a word for 'seems', see Chapter 13):

They want to go with us.

Karerwa issho ni ikitai to
itte imasu.

The children want something
to drink.

Kodomo wa nanika nomitai
deshō.

A common alternative is to add -garu to the tai ending. Note the formation: ikitai → ikitagaru. This is generally found as -gatte iru/imasu:

She wanted to do it but she couldn't.

Kanojo wa yaritagatte ita
n'desu ga dekinakatta
desu.

81 'Want someone to ...'

The te form of the verb plus hoshii is used for 'want someone to do something'. The agent (the person required to perform the action) is followed by ni. The speaker will use it only when addressing those he deems to be of inferior status or when speaking to intimates. The form is frequently used interrogatively in polite speech to mean 'Do you want me/us to ...?':

*Tanaka, I want you to come early tomorrow.
Do you want me to phone?*

Tanaka-kun ashita hayaku
kite hoshii.
Denwa shite hoshii n'desu
ka.

82 More on *naru/narimasu*

Naru/narimasu is used with the tai form of verbs:

Yesterday I didn't want to, but today I do (J: I have become want to).

Do you (now) want to meet her? Kanojo ni aitaku natta
n'desu ka.

Naru/narimasu is also used very often both with nai itself and the plain negative of verbs:

A: Has the snow all gone?

Yuki wa minna naku
narimashita ka.

*B: No, it hasn't (yet).
He's disappeared.*

(Mada) naku natte imasen.
Kare wa inaku narimashita
yo.

I can't speak Japanese any more. Nihongo wa dekinaku
narimashita.

Naku narimashita used to refer to people means 'die':

My teacher died the day before yesterday. Sensei wa ototoi naku
narimashita.

'Come to ...' is often expressed by yō ni naru/narimasu:

You will (come to) understand one day.

I couldn't do it a week ago, but now I can.

Itsuka wakaru yō ni naru
deshō.

Isshūkan mae wa
dekimasen deshita ga ima
wa dekiru yō ni
narimashita.

83 More on *yō ni*

Yō ni has the literal meaning of 'so as to', 'in such a way that' (see Chapter 11). The same yō ni can be used with suru/shimasu to mean 'be sure to' ('do in such a way as to'):

Be sure to be back by seven.

Be sure to ring, won't you?

Shichiji made ni kaette
kuru yō ni shite kudasai.
Denwa suru yō ni shite
kudasai ne.

Yō ni is used with a large number of other verbs too. Below is a selection:

Open the window (J: so as to let some air in).

Let's pray (J: in such a way that they arrive safely).

I got up early so as to be in time for the plane.

Let's take care (J: in such a way that we do) not to smoke too much.

Kaze ga haitte kuru yō ni
mado o akete kudasai.

Buji ni tōchaku suru yō ni
inorimashō.

Hikōki ni ma ni au yō ni
hayaku okimashita.

Tabako o suisuginai yō ni
chūi shimashō*.

(* This is the health warning found on the side of Japanese cigarette packs.)

Exercise 21

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I don't want to go, neither does she.
- 2 You don't need that, do you?
- 3 Does your brother want to go too?
- 4 Be sure to lock the door, won't you.
- 5 My money's all gone.
- 6 Take care not to break it.

CONVERSATION 12A

Likes and dislikes

Mr Amai (A) asks Mr Brown about his preferences:

- A: Buraun-san wa sukikirai wa arimasu ka.
B: Sō desu ne. Kirai na mono wa amari nai desu ne. Nattō to manjū gurai¹ desu ne. Ato wa² kirai na mono wa betsu ni nai to omoimasu.
A: Sashimi to sushi wa daijōbu desu ka.
B: Sashimi mo sushi mo daikōbutsu desu yo. Saisho wa chotto dake teikō ga atta n'desu ga ima wa totemo suki desu.
A: Nihonshu wa dō desu ka. Gaikokujin wa minna Nihonshu ga suki da to kikimashita ga.
B: Dō deshō. Watashi wa reigai ka mo shiremasen ga Nihonshu wa chotto dame desu!

CONVERSATION 12B

'What sports are you good at?'

They go on to discuss sports:

- A: Buraun-san wa supōtsu ga jōzu deshō?
B: Sō desu ne. Ragubī wa wari to jōzu desu kedo ato wa² amari dekinai n'desu yo. Amai-san wa nanika supōtsu ga dekimasu ka.
A: Yakyū to sofutobōru gurai¹ desu ne.
B: Yakyū wa Nihon de sugoi ninki ga arimasu ne. Sonna ni³ ninki ga aru nante⁴ shirimassen deshita. Yakyū no heta na Nihonjin wa inai n'ja nai desu ka⁵.
A: Sō ka mo shiremasen ne. Kodomo no toki kara minna yatte imasu kara ne. Buraun-san, yakyū no shiai o mi ni ikimasen ka⁶.
B: Zehi ikitai desu ne.
A: Doko no fuan⁷ desu ka.
B: Watashi wa Kyojin⁸ ga suki desu ne. Amai-san wa?
A: Yappari Hanshin Taigāsu⁹ desu ne!

Chapter 13

Notes:

1. **Nattō to manjū gurai:** 'Natto and manju are about the extent of my likes and dislikes'; gurai here means 'and not much else'. Nattō is fermented soy, mostly eaten at breakfast, and manjū are bean cakes.
2. **ato wa:** 'apart from that', 'as for the rest'.
3. **gurai:** see note 1 above.
4. **sonna ni:** 'that' as in 'I didn't know it was *that* popular'. See Chapter 16.
5. **nante:** informal alternative for **to iu koto wa**.
6. **n'ja nai desu ka:** 'Isn't it the case that ... ?'; this is a very common sentence ending.
7. **ikimasen ka:** distinguish between **ikimasen ka**, a suggestion meaning 'would you like to', and **ikitai desu ka** ('do you want to?').
8. **Doko no fuan:** 'Who do you support?'; **doko** refers to 'which team?'
9. **Kyōjin, Hanshin Taigāsu** ('Tigers') are both top professional baseball teams.

MAIN POINTS:

Appearance; feel; taste; sound.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) The weather; (b) The news.

84 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (i)

There are two types of expression involving **sō desu**:

- (1) After the plain form of adjectives or verbs it means 'it appears from what I've heard that ...' or simply 'I hear that ...', 'it is said that ...':

I hear that she's given up Japanese.

Nihongo o yameta sō desu.

I hear it's quiet there.

Asoko wa shizuka da sō desu.

- (2) **Sō desu** is also added to the stem of both types of adjective:

shizuka na → *shizuka* → *shizukasō*
oishii → *oishi* → *oishisō*

N.B.: *ii* ('good') has an irregular form *yosasō*; *nai* ('there isn't') has an irregular form *nasasō*.

Sō desu is also added to the stem of verbs of any group:
dekimasu → *deki* → *dekisō*

Here the meaning is 'it looks, from what I see, (or sounds from what I hear) that (it's going to be) ...'. Compare:

It looks (as if it's going to be) tasty.

I hear it's tasty.

It looks quiet.

They say it's quiet.

She looks as if she wants to eat manju.

I hear she wants to eat manju.
She looks as if she speaks Japanese.

I hear she speaks Japanese.

Oishisō desu.

Oishii sō desu.

Shizukasō desu.

Shizuka da sō desu.

Manjū ga tabelasō desu.

Manjū ga tabelai sō desu.

Nihongo ga dekisō desu.

Nihongo ga dekiru sō desu.

Sō, added to the stem of an adjective or verb, functions as a na adjective:

That's tasty-looking food.

Sore wa oishisō na gohan desu ne.

This is a quiet-looking town.

Kore wa shizukasō na machi desu.

85 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (ii)

Whereas sō desu (2) is used for evidence based largely on sight and refers to something that has not yet been realized, yō desu is used generally for a situation that exists at the time of speaking. Moreover, yō desu's usage is broader and not confined to sight. Consider the following:

He seems to have a temperature.
He didn't appear to understand.
All the shops are shut, it seems.

It appears to be quite useless.

With nouns the particle no is needed:

That person looks like a businessman.

Netsu ga aru yō desu.
Wakaranakatta yō desu.
O-mise wa minna shimatte iru yō desu.
Zenzen dame na yō desu.

Ano hito wa sarariman no yō desu ne.

Yō is also used as a na adjective with a variety of meanings:

There are few beautiful places like Kamikochi.

There are many short people such as myself in Japan.

It's a spring-like day.

Yō may also be followed by ni in a variety of different ways:

She speaks Japanese like a Japanese.

Do it quickly, as the teacher said.

'Just like' is to onaji yō ni:

The Japanese, just like the English, always talk about the weather.

Pronounce it just like the teacher does.

'Unlike' is to chigatte:

Unlike Chinese, Japanese is easy. Chūgokugo to chigatte Nihongo wa kantan desu yo.

Finally, learn this set of useful words:

what sort of (in what way)?
this sort of (in this way)
that sort of (in that way)
that sort of (in that way)

Consider the following:

In what way is it different?
What sort of problem is it?

Kamikochi no yō na utsukushii tokoro wa sukunai desu.

Nihon ni wa watashi no yō na se ga hikui hito wa takusan imasu yo.

Haru no yō na hi desu.

Nihonjin no yō ni Nihongo o hanashimasu.

Sensei ga itta yō ni hayaku shite kudasai.

Nihonjin wa Igirisujin to onaji yō ni itsumo tenki ni tsuite hanasu n'desu.

Sensei to onaji yō ni hatsuon shite kudasai.

dono yō na (ni)
kono yō na (ni)
sono yō na (ni)
ano yō na (ni)

Dono yō ni chigaimasu ka.
Dono yō na mondai desu ka.

86 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (iii)

Mitai and rashii are two common words which at the end of a sentence mean 'appears', 'looks like' in all but the sense of *sō desu* (2). In conversation, mitai is the most common of all the 'appearance' words:

The water seems to have boiled.

O-yu ga waita mitai desu
yo.

I hear he's coming home tomorrow.

Ashita kaette kuru mitai
desu ne.

It seems to be very old.

Totemo furui mitai desu ne.

It appears to be useless.

Dame mitai desu.

He's a businessman, it seems.

Ano hito wa sarariman
mitai desu.

In all the above rashii could be used as well.

Differences between mitai and rashii: mitai is a na adjective; rashii is an i adjective. When used before nouns or as adverbs their meanings differ. Consider first mitai:

I loathe days like today.

Kyō mitai na hi wa daikirai
desu.

Do it like I did.

Watashi ga yatta mitai ni
yatte kudasai.

B rashii A, however, means 'an A typical of B':

He's a manly person.

Otoko rashii otoko desu.

It's a typical spring day.

Haru rashii hi desu.

Exercise 22

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I understand that he married a Japanese girl last year.
- 2 That sashimi really does look tasty, you know.
- 3 The concert seems to have finished now, so shall we go for a drink?
- 4 'How do I use chopsticks?' 'Use them like I do.'
- 5 I loathe people like her. I hear she argues with everyone.

87 Feel, sense, taste, smell, sound, looks, shape

Learn the following idiomatic expressions:

Feel (like) ...	ki ga suru/shimasu
Taste (like) ...	aji ga suru/shimasu
Smell (like) ...	nioi ga suru/shimasu
Sound (like) ...	oto ga suru/shimasu
Feel (as if) ..., get the impression (that) ...	kanji ga suru/shimasu
Look ...	kao o shite iru/imasu
Have a ... shape	katachi o shite iru/imasu

Many of these expressions are preceded by (no) *yō na* or *to iu*. Study the following:

I don't feel like getting up today. Kyō wa okiru ki ga shinai
n'desu.

This fish has got a rather odd taste. Kono sakana wa chotto hen
na aji ga shimasu.
It smells like gas. Gasu no yō na nioi ga
shimasu yo.

It sounds as if it's raining, doesn't it? Ame ga futte iru yō na oto
ga shimasu ne.

I feel that it's expensive.

I get the impression it's a bit difficult.

He looks sad.

She's good-looking.

That temple is a funny shape, isn't it?

Note finally the very common intransitive verbs *mieru/miemasu* (lit. be visible) and *kikoeru/kikoemasu* (lit. be audible):

Excuse me, I can't see.

Can you see the sea?

It looks very pretty.

I can't hear. Would you turn the sound up, please?

Chotto takai kanji ga shimasu.

Chotto muzukashii to iu kanji ga shimasu yo.

Kanashii kao o shite imasu.

Kanojo wa ii kao o shite imasu.

Ano o-tera wa hen na katachi o shite imasu ne.

Sumimasen. (Chotto) miemasen.

Umi ga miemasu ka.

Totemo kirei ni miemasu.

Chotto kikoemasen. Oto o mō chotto ökiku shite moraemasu ka.

Exercise 23

Put into Japanese:

- 1 One gets the feeling that it's spring already.
- 2 Don't you feel like going out tonight?
- 3 He looks as if he hasn't eaten for a long time.
- 4 That house is shaped like a temple.
- 5 Can't you smell something (J: isn't there a smell)?

CONVERSATION 13A

The weather

Mr Amai and Mr Brown discuss today's weather:

- A: Kyō no tenki wa dō naru n'deshō ka.
B: Tenki yohō ni yoru to' hare da sō desu ga dōmo haresō na kanji ga shimasen ne.
A: Sō desu ne. Ame ga furisō desu kara pikunikku wa chūshi ni naru n'deshō. Mō ame ga furihajimeta mitai desu yo.
B: Un, potsupotsu futte iru yō desu ne.
Komarimashita. Demo nishi no hō wa akarui desu kara ato kara hareru yō na ki mo shimasu'yo.

CONVERSATION 13B

The news

Mr Amai talks about an earthquake in Tokyo:

- A: Kesa no nyūsu o mimashita ka.
B: Mada mite imasen. Dōshite desu ka.
A: Nyūsu ni yoru to' Tōkyō ni kanari ökii jishin ga atta sō desu. Shindo 5' datta rashii desu yo.
Ökil deshō?
B: Shindo 5 wa ökii desu ne. Fushōsha wa?
A: Fushōsha wa nannin deta ka oboete imasen ga nanninka'shinda mitai desu yo. Jishin wa kowai desu ne.
B: Kowai desu yo. Demo 1923nen no yō na ökii jishin ja nakute yokatta desu ne.
A: Sore wa sō desu ga nyūsu de mō sugu mō hitotsu jishin ga aru ka mo shirenai kara chūi suru yō ni itte imashita yōo.

Notes:

1. **ni yoru to ... sō desu**: 'according to ...'; **yoru to ... followed by sō da/desu** is a very common way of expressing 'according to ...'.
2. **yō na ki mo shimasu**: 'I actually feel that ...'.
3. See note 1.
4. **Shindo 5**: 'magnitude 5'.
5. **nanninka**: 'quite a few people'; for other related expressions see Chapter 14.
6. **ja nakute yokatta desu**: 'it's lucky that it wasn't'.

Chapter 14

MAIN POINTS:

Relative clauses, simple and complex; anybody/somebody/nobody.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A radio interview; (b) A temple in Kyoto.

88 Relative clauses (i)

A relative clause in English is one which begins with 'who' (e.g. 'the child who ...') or 'which' (e.g. 'the car which ...'). As you know, in Japanese there are no words for 'who', 'which', etc. in this sense. For example, 'a car which is fast' is simply *hayai kuruma*. (Refer back to sections 37 and 40.) Just as adjectives can come before nouns, so too can verbs in the formation of 'relative clauses'. Study these examples:

The child who is crying (i.e. the 'is crying' child) is my son.

The man who is singing in the bar (i.e. the 'in the bar is singing' man) is the President.

The car which crashed is a Toyota.

Naite iru kodomo wa musuko desu.

Bā de utatte iru hito wa shachō desu.

Shōtotsu shita kuruma wa Toyota desu.

89 Relative clauses (ii)

Consider how the Japanese say more complex relative clauses, noting in the examples below that *no* may replace *ga*:

the man whose eyes are blue

(J: the 'eyes are blue' man)

a student with no money (J: a

'there is no money' student)

a country with lots of mountains

(J: a 'mountains are many'

country)

me ga (no) aoi hito wa

o-kane ga (no) nai gakusei

ga

yama ga (no) òi kuni ga

Now consider how to say 'whom', 'to whom', 'in which', 'whose', 'on which', etc.:

The man whom I saw (J: the 'I saw' man) is a famous singer.

The girl to whom I sent a card (J: the 'I sent a card' girl) will be twenty-one tomorrow.

The bar in which we had arranged to meet (J: the 'we had arranged to meet' bar) is a haunt for foreigners.

The man whose father had that accident (J: the 'father had an accident' man) lives near me.

The road on which we came (J: the 'we came' road) is different.

Note that the subject of the relative clause may be expressed either by *ga* or by *no*.

The following are also a type of relative clause: 'things to do', *suru koto*; 'places to see', *miru tokoro*; 'something to write with' or 'something to write on', *kaku mono*; 'something to eat', *taberu mono*.

N.B.: An abstract thing is *koto*, a concrete thing is *mono*.

Exercise 24

Put into Japanese:

- I like that car with the red roof.
- Who's that girl drinking coffee?
- Japan is a country with a very large population.
- Who was that man you were speaking to just now? Is he someone you've known for a long time?
- This is the book Mr Tanaka bought for his wife.
- This is the shop in which I bought it.

90 'Someone', 'something'

'Someone', 'something', etc. are made by adding *ka* to the question words 'who', 'what', etc.

Positive statement	Negative or positive question	
someone, somebody	someone, somebody	dareka
anyone, anybody		donataka
something	something, anything	nanika
sometime	sometime	itsuka
somewhere	somewhere, anywhere	dokoka
one or the other	one or the other	dochiraka
one (some) of them	one (some) of them	doreka
some, a fair number of	some, a fair number of, any	ikutsuka
some, a fair amount of	some, a fair amount of, any	ikuraka

With these words *ga* and *o* are often omitted. *Wa* is never used. Other particles such as *ni*, *e*, *kara*, *to*, etc. must, however, be used when the verb demands it:

Someone stole my purse.
Did you tell someone (anyone)?
Will you have something to drink?
Shall we go and see a No (play) sometime?
I saw that advertisement somewhere.
They live somewhere in Nagoya.
Have you chosen one of (the two of) them?
Have you chosen (any) one of these?
There are a fair number of possibilities, you know.

Often these words are used just 'sitting' before an adjective plus noun or a relative clause, contributing no extra meaning. Study the examples below:

Shall we go and have something good to eat?
I'd like to go somewhere where there aren't any people.

'Some people ... other people ...', 'some places ... other places ...' etc. require a different construction with *aru* ('certain') and *wa*:

Some people like manju, others don't.
Some places I went to, others I didn't.

Ka is added to the appropriate question word to mean 'a fair number of', 'quite a few':

Dareka (ga) watashi no saifu o nusumimashita.
Dareka ni iimashita ka.
Nanika (o) nomimasu ka.
Itsuka Nō o mi ni ikimashō ka.
Dokoka de sono kōkoku o mimashita.
Nagoya no dokoka ni sunde imasu.
Dochiraka (o) erabimashita ka.
Doreka (o) erabimashita ka.
Ikutsuka no kanōsei ga arimasu yo.

Nanika oishii mono o tabe ni ikimashō ka.
Dokoka hito ga inai tokoro ni ikital desu ne.

Aru hito wa manjū ga suki desu ga aru hito wa kirai desu.
Aru tokoro wa ikimashita ga aru tokoro wa ikimasen deshita.

It took quite a few hours.
A fair number of people were there.
He's been living in Japan for a fair number of years now.

Nanjikanka kakarimashita yo.
Nanninka kite imashita.
Nihon ni mō nannenka sunde imasu.

91 'Nobody', 'nothing'

'Nobody', 'nothing', etc. in negative statements, and 'anybody', 'anything', etc. in negative questions are translated by the appropriate question word and *mo*:

<i>Negative statement</i>	<i>Negative question</i>	
no one, nobody	anyone, anybody	daremo, donatamo
nothing	anything	nanimō
nowhere	anywhere	dokomo
neither	either of two	dochiramo
none	any of three and more	doremo
not much at all	not much at all	ikuramo
not many at all	not many at all	ikutsumo

The particles *ga* and *o* need not be used with these words. *Wa* is never used. All other particles are used. Note that the particle is inserted between the question word and *mo* (e.g. *dare ni mo*; *doko e mo*, etc.):

I haven't told anyone yet.	Mada dare ni mo itte imasen.
There's nothing in the fridge.	Reizōko ni nanimō haitte inai n'desu.
The teacher isn't anywhere.	Sensei wa doko ni mo irasshaimasen.
I don't like either of them.	Dochiramo suki ja nai desu.
Don't you like any of them?	Doremo suki ja nai desu ka.

N.B.: 'Never' in the present and future tenses is translated by *kesshite* ('definitely') or *zettai ni* ('absolutely') - for 'have never' see Chapter 15:

I'll never marry her.

Kanojo to zettai ni kekkon
shimasen.

*They're never going to win,
are they?*

Zettai ni katanai desu ne.

Study these next examples, in which the question word followed by *mo* is an adjective:

They don't sell them in any shop. **Dono** mise de mo utte
imasen.

*My son doesn't go to any
school yet.*

Musuko wa mada doko no
gakkō ni mo itte imasen.

Often certain of these words are used just sitting before an adjective and noun or a relative clause, with no extra meaning. Study the following:

There was no one I know there. Asoko ni daremo shitte iru
hito wa imasen deshita.

*There's no interesting
programme on, is there?*

Nanimo omoshiroi
bangumi wa yatte imasen
ne.

There's nowhere I want to go.

Dokomo ikitai tokoro wa
arimasen.

Several of these words appear in positive sentences as well:

I can do both. **Dochiramo** dekimasu.
They're all tasty. **Doremo** oishii desu.

Mo is added to the appropriate question word to mean
'a great number of ...', 'any number of ...':

*A great number of people were
there.* Nanninmo kite imashita.

*They've been married for a
great number of years
(years and years).* Mō nannenmo kekkon shite
imasu.

*We drank bottles and bottles
of beer.* Biru wa nanbonmo
nomimashita.

I asked time and time again. Nankaimo kikimashita.

92 'Anybody', 'anything'

'Anybody, 'anything' in positive sentences (e.g. 'Anybody can speak Japanese!') is translated by the appropriate question word followed by *demo*. The particles *wa*, *ga* and *o* are not used. All other particles are. Study the selection of examples below:

Anybody can speak Japanese.

Daredemo Nihongo ga
dekimasu.

I'll eat anything tasty.

Nandemo oishii mono o
tabemasu.

*Please take whichever of the two
you like.*

Dochirademo suki na no o
totte kudasai.

Please use any of them.
Come round any time.

Doredemo tsukatte kudasai.
Itsudemo asobi ni kite
kudasai.

There's any amount of beer.

Biru wa ikurademo arimasu
yo.

They sell them in any country.

Dono kuni de demo utte
imasu.

Exercise 25

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Is there anywhere quiet near here?
- 2 What sports can he do?
- 3 He bought loads and loads of (J: any number of) books.
- 4 There was nobody there who could speak English.
- 5 There isn't anything interesting on the TV tonight.

CONVERSATION 14A

A radio interview

The interviewer (A) asks Mr Brown about his motives for visiting Japan:

- A: Mina-san, o-hayō gozaimasu. Kyō no o-kyaku-san wa Igirisu kara oide ni natta¹ Jon Buraun-san desu. Buraun-san, Nihon ni kita dōki² wa nan desu ka. Yahari Nihongo no benkyō desu ka.
- B: Sō desu ne. Watashi ga Nihon ni kitai to omotta dōki wa ikutsuka arimasu ga yappari hanasu chikara to kiku chikara³ o tsuketakatta kara desu ne.
- A: Naruhodo. Sore kara Buraun-san, Nihon de ichiban shitai koto wa – Nihongo o benkyō suru hoka ni⁴ – nan desu ka.
- B: Shitai koto wa takusan arimasu ga yappari Nihon no shakai ni tokekonde tomodachi o takusan tsukuritai desu ne.
- A: Sore kara saigo ni Buraun-san, ichiban ikitai tokoro wa doko desu ka.
- B: Sō desu ne. Gaikokujin ga amari ikanai tokoro ni ikitai desu ne. Tatoeba Gotō retto mitai na rekishi no omoshiroi tokoro⁵ o tazunetai desu ne.
- A: Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimashita.

CONVERSATION 14B

A temple in Kyoto

Mr Brown goes to visit a Zen temple in Kyoto with Mr Inoue (I):

- B: Kyōto no doko ni ikimashō ka.
- I: Sō desu ne. Teien no aru o-tera ga ii desu ka soretomo tatemono no omoshiroi tokoro⁶ ga ii desu ka. Kyōto ni wa nandemo arimasu yo.
- B: Zen no eikyō o uketa teien o mite mitai⁷ desu ne.
- I: Soshitara, mazu Ryōanji to iu o-tera ni ikimashō. Ryōanji wa totemo omoshiroi desu yo. Hito wa itsumo chotto ōi desu ga zettai ni miru kachi⁸ wa aru to omoimasu yo. Ryōanji wa Zen no shisō o arawasu tenkeiteki na teien⁹ to zenzen chigau mitai desu ne.
- B: Omoshirosō desu ne. Seiyō de iu teien¹⁰ to zenzen chigau mitai desu ne.

Notes:

1. **oide ni natta Buraun-san**: 'Mr Brown, who has come from England'; **oide ni naru/narimasu** is an honorific form of **kuru/kimasu**.
2. **Nihon ni kita dōki**: 'your motives for coming to Japan'.
3. **hanasu chikara to kiku chikara**: 'my ability to speak and hear'.
4. **benkyō suru hoka ni**: 'in addition to (apart from) studying'.
5. **omoshiroi tokoro**: 'a place like the Goto Islands with an interesting history'.
6. **tatemono no omoshiroi tokoro**: 'a place whose buildings are interesting'.
7. **mite mitai**: 'have a look and see'.
8. **miru kuchi wa aru**: 'worth seeing'.
9. ... **arawasu tenkeiteki na teien de**: 'a typical garden which shows ...'.
10. ... **dake shika nai teien**: gardens with only white raked sand and stones, such as Ryoanji, are typical of Zen-influenced gardens.
11. **Seiyō de iu teien**: 'what one calls a garden in the West'.

Chapter 15

MAIN POINTS:

Must/must not, may/may not, can/cannot; some uses of koto and no with verbs.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Culture shock? (b) 'Have you ever been to Kamikochi?'

93 'Must', 'have to', 'must not', 'may not'

You need to know two ways to express 'must', 'have to'. The first involves the negative plain form of the verb plus to ('if') plus **dame desu** ('it's no good'):

You must read it (J: if you don't read it, it's no good). Sore o yomanai to dame desu.

You must have your registration card with you. Gaijin tōrokushō o motte inai to dame desu.

The second is known as the **nakereba narimasen** form. First make the negative plain form: **suru/shimasu** → **shinai**, then substitute **nakereba** for **nai** and add **narimasen**: **shinai** → **shinakereba** → **shinakereba narimasen** (**nakereba** means 'if (you do) not ...'; **narimasen** means 'it's no good'):

You must eat it all (J: if you don't eat it all, it's no good). Zenbu tabenakereba narimasen.
I have to catch the 9.30 train. Kuji sanjuppun no densha ni noranakereba narimasen.

'Had to' is formed by the past of *narimasen*:

We had to tell him. *Kare ni iwanakereba
narimasen deshita.*

'Must not', 'may not' is expressed by the *te wa ikemasen* form. Add *wa* to the *te* form of the verb: *suu/suimasu* ('smoke') → *sutte wa*, and then add *ikemasen*: *sutte wa ikemasen* (*te wa* means 'if (you) ...'; *ikemasen* means 'it will not do'). A very common abbreviated form involves substituting *tcha* for *te wa*:

You mustn't smoke in here (J): *Koko de sutte wa ikemasen.*
if you smoke here, it won't do.

We mustn't laugh, must we? *Waratcha ikemasen ne.*

94 'May', 'don't have to', 'don't need to'

'May' (and 'can', in the sense of 'it's all right to') requires the *te* form plus *mo* ('even if') plus *ii desu* ('it's good, it's all right'):

You may stay (the night).
May I sit here?

Tomatte mo ii desu yo.
*Koko ni suwatte mo ii desu
ka.*

A: Do you mind if I smoke?

*Tabako o sutte mo ii desu
ka.*

B: No, I don't.

Hai, ii desu yo.

Kamaimasen ('I don't mind') may be used instead of *ii desu*:

A: Do you mind if I open the
window?

*Mado o akete mo
kamaimasen ka.*

B: No, I don't mind.

Hai, kamaimasen.

'Don't have to' and 'don't need to' are expressed by the negative *te* form plus *mo* plus *ii desu* (or *kamaimasen*):

A: We don't have to pay now,
do we?

*Ima sugu harawanakute mo
ii desu ne.*

B: No, you don't.

Hai, ii desu.

You don't have to eat the manju. *Manjū wa tabenakute mo ii
desu.*

Note the use of the *te* form of *desu* in the following (*mo* is often dropped):

Is this O.K.? (Will this do?)
One will do.

Kore de (mo) ii desu ka.
Hitotsu de (mo) ii desu.

The construction is found with adjectives too:

I don't mind if it's expensive.
It's O.K. if it's not cheap.

Takakute mo ii desu yo.
*Yasuku nakute mo
kamaimasen.*

95 'Wherever', 'whoever', etc.

Question words used with the *te mo* form translate the idea of 'wherever', 'whoever':

wherever you go
wherever you eat
whatever I say to her
whoever we ask
whenever (at whatever time)
you leave
whatever school they go to

doko e itte mo
doko de tabete mo
kanojo ni nani o itte mo
dare ni kiite mo
itsu shuppatsu shite mo

All these forms may be followed by *ii desu* or *kamaimasen* to give 'I don't mind', 'it doesn't matter':

I don't mind where you go.

*Doko e itte mo
kamaimasen.*

It doesn't matter what you say.

Nani o itte mo ii desu.

96 'Can', 'be able'

There are two ways of expressing 'can', 'be able'. The first involves the so-called potential form of the verb, when the verb ending is changed as follows:

Group 1 verbs:

taberu → tabe → taberareru

There is an abbreviated form of this also in common use:
taberu → tabe → tabereru

Group 2 verbs:

oyogu → oyogeru arau → araeru

Irregular verbs:

suru → dekiru kuru → korareru (or koreru)

All these 'can' forms function as Group 1 verbs in their own right. Check that you can make 'can' forms of the following:

deru/demasu	→ derareru/deraremasu (dereru/demmasu)
iku/ikimasu	ikeru/ikemasu
harau/haraimasu	haraeru/haraemasu

o, ga or wa may follow the object of the potential:

Can you speak English?	Eigo ga hanasemasu (dekimasu) ka.
I can't eat all this.	Kore wa zenbu taberaremasesu (taberemasen) yo.

The second way is to use the plain form of the verb plus koto ga (or wa or mo) dekiru/dekimasu:

He can write Japanese.

You can't buy anything with 500 yen.

I can walk but I can't run.

Can you both read and write Japanese?

Kare wa Nihongo o kaku koto ga dekimasu.

Gohyakuen de wa nanimo kau koto wa dekimasen.

Aruku koto wa dekimasu ga hashiru koto wa dekimasen.

Nihongo o kaku koto mo yomu koto mo dekimasu ka.

Note here that expressions such as 'it is too (hot) ... for me to (eat) ...' may be translated by the te form of an adjective plus one of the 'can' forms:

*It was too hot for me to eat (j;
it was hot and so I could not ...).*

He spoke too quickly for me to be able to keep up.

Atsukute taberenakatta desu.

Hanashi ga hayasugite oitsukemasen deshita.

Exercise 26

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Is it all right if I go with you?' 'No, I have to go on my own.'
- 2 Can you be back home by six o'clock?
- 3 You don't have to write it in Japanese. You can write it in romaji.
- 4 You mustn't talk like that.
- 5 '10,000 yen will do, won't it?' 'Yes, that will be fine.'
- 6 I had to phone the police.

97 Some uses of *koto* (i)

'Do/does ... ever ...?' is expressed with the plain form plus ... *koto wa* (or *ga*) *arimasu ka*, often with an adverb like *tokidoki* ('sometimes'):

A: Do you ever browse in bookshops?

B: Yes, I do sometimes.

A: Do you sometimes eat out?

B: No, hardly ever.

Honya-san de tachiyomi suru *koto wa arimasu ka*.

Hai, *tokidoki arimasu*.

Tokidoki gaishoku suru koto wa arimasu ka.

Ie, hotondo nai desu ne.

'Has/have ... ever ...?' requires the *ta* form plus ... *koto wa* (or *ga*) *aru/arimasu*:

A: Have you ever been to Nagasaki?

B: No, I haven't.

A: I've never been skiing, have you?

B: I have (actually).

Sometimes I go out for a drink but not often for a meal.

Nagasaki e itta *koto wa arimasu ka*.

Nai desu.

Watashi wa suki e itta *koto wa arimasen ga anata wa*.

Watashi wa *arimasu yo*.

Tokidoki nomi ni iku koto wa arimasu ga shokuji ni iku koto wa amari nai desu.

Mo may also be used:

I have also been to Taiwan.

I haven't even been to Kyushu.

Taiwan e itta *koto mo arimasu yo*.

Kyūshū e itta *koto mo arimasen*.

98 Some uses of *koto* (ii)

'Decide to ...' is translated by ... *koto ni suru/shimasu*, and 'be decided (come about) that ...' by *koto ni naru/narimasu*:

We decided to call an ambulance. *Kyūkyūsha o yobu koto ni shimashita*.

I've decided not to give up Japanese. *Nihongo o yamenai koto ni shimashita*.

It's been decided that I'm going back to America next week. *Raishū Amerika e kaeru koto ni natte imasu*.

99 Some uses of *koto* and *no*

By adding *koto* or *no* to the plain form of a verb you are in effect turning that verb into a noun: *hon o yomu* – read books; *hon o yomu koto (no)* – (the) reading (of) books. In many cases *no* and *koto* are interchangeable, but *no* is probably more frequent in conversation. Study the following:

I like reading books.

Speaking Japanese is easy but writing it is difficult.

I'm tired of studying.

Hon o yomu no ga suki desu.

Nihongo o hanasu no wa kantan desu ga kaku no wa muzukashii desu.

Benkyō suru koto ni akita n'desu.

In the following expressions *no* is more common. Consider them carefully:

I saw him talking to her.

Let's not go (J: Let's stop going).

I'm waiting for him to come back.

Don't forget to phone!

Would you help me make it?

Kanojo to hanashite iru no o mimashita.

Iku no o yamemashō.

Kaette kuru no o matte imasu.

Denwa suru no o wasurenaide kudasai.

Tsukuru no o tetsudatte kuremasu ka.

100 Some uses of *no* (i)

No is frequently used in emphatic questions such as 'When is it that you're off?', 'Why is it that you're studying Japanese?'. Study the examples below:

When is it that you're off? (J: As for your going, when is it?)	Iku no wa itsu desu ka.
Why is it that you're studying Japanese?	Nihongo o benkyō shite iru no wa naze desu ka.
Where is it that you met?	Shiriaitta no wa doko desu ka.
Who is it that she married?	Kanojo ga kekkon shita no wa dare desu ka.

101 Some uses of *no* (ii)

No ni after a plain form is used to mean either 'for the purpose of (in order to)' or 'although'. In the first sense, either no ni wa or ni wa may be used instead:

What do you use to make sukiyaki?	Sukiyaki o tsukuru no ni nani o tsukaimasu ka.
It takes about sixteen hours to fly to Japan, I hear.	Nihon e iku no ni wa jūrokujikan gurai kakaru sō desu.
How long did it take to get used to Japanese food?	Nihon no tabemono ni nareru no ni dore gurai kakatta n'desu ka.
I came to Nara (in order) to see a friend.	Tomodachi ni au tame ni Nara e kimashita.

You already know ga, shikashi and keredomo in the sense of 'but', 'although'. No ni differs in three respects: (1) it is never used to begin a sentence; (2) even in polite speech it is preceded by a plain form; (3) it is generally more emphatic than the other words. Note also that no ni cannot be preceded by da. Na must be used instead:

Although she slept for hours she's still tired.	Nanjikanmo neta no ni mada tsukarete imasu.
Although I said he mustn't go, he went.	Itte wa ikenai to itta no ni itta n'desu.
He said he'd go although he's ill.	Byōki na no ni iku to itte imashita.

The context will make clear which of the meanings of no ni is intended.

Exercise 27

Put into Japanese:

- 'Do you like going to see temples?' 'Yes, I do. What about you?'
- 'Have you ever eaten manju?' 'No, I haven't. Why?'
- We've decided to go by car and not by train.
- 'Do you ever speak Japanese at home?' 'Yes, sometimes we do.'
- Why is it that he's always late?

CONVERSATION 15A

Culture shock?

Mr Inoue (I) asks Mr Brown if he's experienced a culture shock:

- I: Nihon de karuchā shokku o keiken shimashita ka.
- B: Sō desu ne, karuchā shokku to iu hodo ja nai¹ desu ga yappari iroiro nareru no ni jikan ga kakarimashita ne.
- I: Kotoba toka tabemono toka desu ka.
- B: Sō desu ne. Sore kara doko o mite mo kōkoku to ka hyōshiki toka wa mina kanji desu kara saisho wa mekura no yō na ki ga shimashita.
- I: Sō deshō. Sore kara nichijō seikatsu de shite mo ii koto to shite wa ikenai koto mo sukoshi wa atta deshō.
- B: Sukoshi dake desu. Tatoeba ie no naka de kutsu o haite² wa ikenai deshō. Sore kara suwarikata mo chigaimasu ne. Nihon de wa nanjikan mo agura o kaite suwaru' koto mo aru deshō. Nareru no ni sore wa jikan ga kakarimashita yo.
- I: O-furo no hairikata mo zuibun chigau deshō. O-furo no naka de sekken o tsukatte wa ikenai deshō. Sore kara sen o nuite wa ikenai deshō, ato de minna hairimasu kara ne.

CONVERSATION 15B

'Have you ever been to Kamikochi?'

Mr Brown tells Mr Inoue about his holiday plans:

- B: Inoue-san, Kamikochi e itta koto wa arim asu ka.
- I: Mada nai desu yo. Nagano made shigoto de iku koto wa tokidoki arimasu ga Kamikochi made wa itte kita koto wa nai desu ne. Dōshite desu ka.

- B: Raishū tomodachi to issho ni iku koto ni natte iru n'desu.
- I: Kamikochi o miru no ni chōdo ii jiki deshō ne. Hachigatsu demo suzushikute kimochi ga ii mitai desu ne.
- B: Inoue-san, issho ni itte mo ii desu yo.
- I: Chotto muri desu. Kaisha no shigoto ga isogashikute kotoshi wa yasumi ga torenai n'desu yo.

Notes:

1. to iu hodo ja nai desu ga; 'it's not quite what I'd call a culture shock'.
2. kutsu o haite: Japanese uses different words for 'wear' depending on where the article is worn:
wear a hat = bōshi o kaburu/kaburimasu.
wear glasses = megane o kakeru/kakemasu.
wear a coat, shirt, jacket = kōto, shatsu, uwagi o kiru/kimasu.
wear a dress = doresu o kiru/kimasu.
wear a skirt, trousers, socks, shoes = sukāto, zubon, kutsushita, kutsu o haku/hakimasu.
wear a watch, tie, scarf, gloves = tokei, nekutai, mafura, tebukuro o suru/shimasu.
3. agura o kaite: 'sit cross-legged'. 'Sit kneeling' is seiza o suru/shimasu.

Chapter 16

MAIN POINTS:

Comparing things: A is ... er than B, A is the biggest; A is (not) as ... as B.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Comparing England and Japan; (b) The doctor's.

102 Comparing things (i)

Consider first the following:

A: Which is better?

Dochira ga ii desu ka.

B: The cheap(er) one is better.

Yasui no ga ii desu.

A: Which car do you prefer?

Dochira no kuruma ga suki
desu ka.

B: I prefer the red one.

Akai no ga suki desu.

It will be seen that Japanese adjectives have no comparative forms of their own. *Dochira*, 'which (of two)', itself implies a comparative. 'Which is ...er, A or B?' is translated like this:

A: Which do you prefer, sumo
or baseball?

Sumō to yakyū to dochira
ga suki desu ka.

B: I prefer baseball.

Yakyū ga suki desu ne.

103 Comparing things (ii)

You need to know two ways of translating 'A is ...er than B'. The first is *A wa B yori ... desu*:

My word processor was cheaper than yours. Watashi no wā-puro wa
anata no yori yasukatta
desu.

*Today's weather is better than
yesterday's.*

Kyō no tenki wa kinō yori ii
desu ne.

The second is *B yori A no hō ga ... desu*:

Japanese is easier than Chinese, Chūgokugo yori Nihongo
you know. no hō ga kantan desu.

*I prefer the Kansai area to the
Kanto.* Kantō yori Kansai no hō ga
suki desu.

The difference between them reflects the difference between *wa* and *ga*. *A wa B yori* is a general statement about *A*. It may be thought of as answering 'Tell me something about A'. *B yori A no hō ga* is more emphatic. It emphasizes *A*, and may be thought of as answering 'Which is ...er?'. *Yori* may be omitted:

Summer is better.
Chioko is prettier.

Natsu no hō ga ii desu ne.
Chioko no hō ga kirei desu.

Both constructions are also used with adverbs:

He speaks faster than I do.

Kare wa watashi yori
hayaku hanashimasu.

She can sing better than you.

Anata yori kanojo no hō ga
jōzu ni utaemasu.

Study carefully the following, in which verbs are used:

*Playing golf is more fun than
staying at home.*

Gorufu o suru no wa uchi ni
iru yori tanoshii desu ne.

*Going by train is quicker
than walking.*

Aruku yori densha de iku
hō ga hayai desu ne.

When in English 'would' is used, in Japanese the verb placed before *hō* is in the *ta* form, but only in the positive:

*It would be easier to walk than
to take the bus.*

Basu de iku yori aruite itta
hō ga kantan desu.

*It would be cheaper to stay at
home.*

Uchi ni ita hō ga yasui desu.

*It would be more sensible not
to do that.*

Sō shinai hō ga gōriteki
desu yo.

'Should (not)' and 'should (not) have' are translated by '*ta (-nai) hō ga ii desu*' and '*-ta (-nai) hō ga yokatta desu*' respectively:

You should apologize immediately.

You shouldn't interrupt.

Perhaps I shouldn't have said that.

You should have brought your alien registration card.

Sugu ayamatta hō ga ii desu.

Kuchi o dasanai hō ga ii desu.

Sō iwanai hō ga yokatta ka mo shiremasen.

Gaijin tōrokushō o motte kita hō ga yokatta desu.

Exercise 28

Put into Japanese:

- Do the Japanese work harder than the British?
- We shouldn't have taken the taxi.
- In winter Japan is colder than Britain, you know.
- Which is faster, the bullet train or the new French train?
- Drinking at a bar is more fun than drinking at home.

104 Comparing things (iii)

'Much ...er', 'far ...er' may be translated by either *motto* or *zutto*:

A: That car is much faster than this.

B: It's much more expensive.

You speak far more fluently than I do.

Ano kuruma wa kore yori motto hayai desu yo.

Zutto takai n'desu.

Watashi yori zutto ryūchō ni hanashimasu.

'A little ...er' is (*mō*) *chotto* ... or (*mō*) *sukoshi* ...:

It's a little colder than yesterday. Kinō yori sukoshi samui desu.

Prices in Tokyo are a little higher than in London.

Tōkyō no bukka wa Rondon yori chotto takai desu.

105 Superlatives

There is no special superlative form of the adjective. Superlatives are made by adding *mottomo* or *ichiban* ('number 1'):

Learning kanji is one of the most enjoyable things.

She's the best at table tennis.

'Which is the ...est, A, B, or C?' requires *naka* or *uchi*:

A: Which is the prettiest, Nagasaki, Yokohama or Hakodate?

B: Isn't Nagasaki the prettiest of them?

Kanji o oboeru no wa motto mottomo tanoshii koto no hitotsu desu.

Takkyū ga ichiban jōzu na no wa kanojo desu.

Nagasaki to Yokohama to Hakodate no naka de doko ga ichiban kirei desu ka.
Sono* naka de Nagasaki wa ichiban kirei ja nai desu ka

* Sono, here, means 'of it/him/her/them'. Note the use of the particle *de* to mean 'in':

She's the cleverest pupil in the class.

Kanojo wa kurasu de mottomo atama ga ii seito desu.

106 'How much ...?' 'How ... is it?' 'It's this ...'

'How (much) ...?' is *dore hodo*, *dore gurai* or *dore dake*:

How much do you need?

How much can you eat?

How tired are you?

Dore gurai irimasu ka.

Dore dake (takusan) taberemasu ka.

Dore hodo tsukarete imasu ka.

Study the following expressions with adjectives and adverbs:

How late is it?

How fast does it go?

How big is it?

Dore gurai osoi desu ka.

Dore hodo hayaku

hashirimasu ka.

Dore dake ökii desu ka.

'This big', 'that much', etc. are translated by *kore* (or *sore*, are), *hodo*, *gurai* or *dake* plus an adjective or adverb. *Hodo* is used more in negative sentences:

Was it about this big?

Kore gurai ökikatta n'desu
ka.

It wasn't that good, you know.

Sore hodo yoku nakatta
n'desu yo.

Learn also the following: *Donna ni* asks 'how?' (meaning 'to what extent?'), and is answered by *konna ni* ('this, to this extent'), *sonna ni* or *anna ni* ('that, to that extent').

A: How big is it?

Donna ni ökii n'desu ka.

B: It's not that big.

Sonna ni ökiku nai n'desu
yo.

107 'As ... as ...'

Gurai and *hodo* both appear in 'as ... as ...' sentences. *A wa B hodo ...* is used most in negative sentences. Study the following:

I'm not as clever as him.

Watashi wa kare hodo
atama ga yoku nai desu.

Today isn't as hot as yesterday.

Kyō wa kinō hodo atsuku
nai desu ne.

In positive sentences, *A wa B to onaji gurai ...* is perhaps the most common:

Is Japan (about) as big as Britain?

Nihon wa Igirisu to onaji
gurai ökii desu ka.

He's as bad at Japanese as I am.

Kare wa watashi to onaji
gurai Nihongo ga heta
desu.

'As ... as possible' is *dekiru dake* plus an adverb or adjective:

Please come as quickly as possible.

Go and get as cheap a one as possible.

*Dekiru dake hayaku kite
kudasai.*

*Dekiru dake yasui no o
katte kite kudasai.*

Exercise 29

Put into Japanese:

- 1 He drinks about as much as I do.
- 2 You shouldn't have said that.
- 3 'Which do you like the best?' 'My favourite one is that blue one.'
- 4 'How big was the fish? Was it this big?' 'No, it wasn't that big, it was a bit smaller than that.'
- 5 I'm not as tall as my big brother, but I'm (about) as strong as he is.

CONVERSATION 16A

Comparisons

Mr Inoue and Mr Brown compare Britain and Japan:

- B: Inoue-san, Nihon to Eikoku to menseki wa dotchi¹ ga hiroi ka shitte imasu ka. Eikoku no hō ga sukoshi hiroi desu ka.
- I: Chigaimasu yo. Eikoku wa Nihon hodo hiroku nai desu yo.
- B: Å, sō desu ka. Shikashi jinkō wa Nihon no hō ga zutto ôi deshō?
- I: Sore wa sō desu. Eikoku no nibai² ijō³ ôi n'ja nai desu ka. Sore kara, Nihon no hotondo ga yama na no de sumeru⁴ tokoro wa sonna ni nai n'desu yo.
- B: Sō desu ne, jinkō mitsudo wa totemo takai n'desu ne.
- I: Eikoku ni wa yama to iu hodo no mono⁵ wa nai mitai desu ne.
- B: Sō demo nai desu yo⁶. Fuji-san hodo takai no wa nai ka mo shiremasen ga Uēruzu toka Sukottorando toka ni wa yama wa ikutsumo arimasu yo.
- I: Hontō desu ka⁷. Sore kara kikō wa zuibun chigaimasu ne. Nihon wa shiki ga hakkiri shite ite⁸ Eikoku wa natsu demo fuyu mitai na hi ga takusan aru sō desu ne.
- B: Sono tōri desu. Shikashi Eikoku ni tsuyu toka taifū toka wa nai desu.
- I: Urayamashii desu ne, Eikoku no hō ga anzen na yō desu ne.
- B: Kazan mo nai shi jishin mo arimasen kara ne!

CONVERSATION 16B

The doctor's

Mr Brown goes to the doctor's (I):

- I: Dō shimashita ka.
- B: I ga itakute tamaranai⁹ n'desu.
- I: Sore wa ikemasen ne. Itsu goro kara desu ka.
- B: Mikka hodo mae kara desu.
- I: Sore ja, shatsu o nuide soko de yoko ni natte kudasai ... Rentogen o totta hō ga ii desu ne.

Several minutes later:

- I: Tada no ichōen dake desu. Shinpai wa imasen. Shibaraku no aida o-sake mo tabako mo hikaeta hō ga ii desu ne.
- B: Gohan wa futsū ni tabete mo ii desu ka.
- I: Takusan tabesuginai hō ga ii desu yo. Sore kara karai mono mo hikaeta hō ga ii desu ne. Kusuri o agemasu kara shokuzen ni nonde kudasai.
- B: Arigatō gozaimasu.
- I: O-daiji ni.

Notes:

1. *dotchi*: abbreviation of *dochira*.
2. *no nibai ... ōi*: 'twice as large'; *bai* is the counter for 'times'.
3. *ijō*: 'more than'.
4. *sumeru tokoro*: 'places where people can live'.
5. *to iu hodo no mono*: 'there is nothing worthy of the name mountain'; lit. 'of the extent that you'd call it a mountain'.
6. *sō demo nai desu yo*: 'that's not quite true, you know'.
7. *hontō desu ka*: 'Really?'
8. *hakkiri shite ite*: *hakkiri suru/shimasu* is 'be clear'; *hakkiri saseru/sasemasu* is 'make clear'.
See Chapter 19.
9. *itakute tamaranai*: 'unbearably painful' (lit. 'painful and I can't bear it').

Chapter 17

MAIN POINTS:

Some time expressions: before/after/while/when, etc.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Climbing Mount Fuji; (b) A Japanese lesson.

108 'While' – *-nagara*

If the subject of both verbs in a 'while' sentence is the same, then *-nagara* is used attached to the stem of the verb:

tabemasu → *tabe* → *tabenagara*
shimasu → *shi* → *shinagara*

<i>He always studies while he watches the TV.</i>	<i>Itsumo terebi o minagara benkyō shimasu.</i>
<i>She was looking at the magazine while having a meal.</i>	<i>Gohan o tabenagara zasshi o mite imashita.</i>

109 'While' – *aida*

When the subjects of the two parts of the 'while' sentence are different, *aida* (nl) is used. The tense of the verb which precedes *aida* is generally the same as in English:

<i>We played cards while the children were asleep.</i>	<i>Kodomo ga nete ita aida toranpu o yarimashita.</i>
<i>There's something I want to ask you while you're here.</i>	<i>Koko ni irassharu aida o-kiki shitai koto ga arimasu ga.</i>

While I was at university, my elder brother was in Korea.

Watashi ga daigaku ni itte ita aida ani ga Kankoku ni imashita.

Study these miscellaneous expressions involving *aida*:

Where were you during the war? Sensō no aida doko ni irashatta n'desu ka.

I haven't seen her for a long time. Nagai aida atte imasen.
He should be here between six and seven o'clock. Rokuji kara shichiji no aida ni kuru hazu desu.
Nagoya is between Osaka and Tokyo. Nagoya wa Ōsaka to Tōkyō to no aida ni arimasu.

110 'After' – *ato*

In addition to the *te* form plus *kara*, *ato* (*de*) is often used (always with the plain past):

After you've finished your meal, do come round, won't you?

Gohan ga owatta ato (de) asobi ni kite kudasai ne.

After I had gone to bed, my brother phoned.

Watashi ga neta ato o-ni-san kara denwa ga arimashita.

Study these additional 'after' phrases:

The concert began after six o'clock.

Konsāto wa rokuji sugi ni hajimarimashita.

After ten minutes we set off.

Juppun tatte kara dekakemashita.

Study these miscellaneous phrases with *ato*:

I'll do it afterwards.

Ato de shimasu.

What happened after that?

Sono ato wa dō narimashita ka.

After the lesson, we walked home.

Jugyō no ato aruite kaerimashita.

There are only two minutes left.

Ato nifun shika arimasen.

111 'Before' – *mae*

Irrespective of the English tense, only the present tense of the Japanese verb can be used with *mae* (*ni*):

Before I leave Japan, I definitely want to climb Mt. Fuji. Nihon o tatsu mae ni zehi Fuji-san ni noboritai desu ne.

They went out for many years before they got married. Kekkon suru mae ni nannenkan mo tsukiatte imashita.

Study these miscellaneous expressions using *mae*:

Where did you live before (that)? (Sono) mae ni doko ni sunde irasshaimashita ka.

Before the war, the cost of living was much cheaper. Sensō no mae bukka wa motto yasukatta desu.

I gave it to a friend the other day. Kono mae tomodachi ni agemashita.

It's a photo of my last girlfriend. Watashi no mae no kanojo no shashin desu.

112 'When' – *toki*

Any tense of the verb or adjective may be used with *toki* (*ni*):

He was already there when I got to the airport. Watashi ga kūkō ni tsuita toki kare wa mō kite imashita.

When I was going out with her, we always went to that bar. Kanojo to tsukiatte ita toki itsumo ano bā ni ikimashita.

I get very tired when it's humid like today.

Study these miscellaneous expressions involving *toki*:

Which company were you working for then?

When I was a student, I played rugby.

There are times when I think I'd like to give up Japanese.

Sono toki doko no kaisha ni tsutomete ita n'desu ka.

Gakusei no toki ragubī o yarimashita.

Nihongo o yametai to omou toki mo arimasu yo.

Exercise 30

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Before you got married, did you go out with lots of girls?
- 2 Was that before you went to Japan or after you'd got there?
- 3 While they were talking, I listened to the news.
- 4 While you're out, I think I'll probably watch the TV.
- 5 We went there once before. Don't you remember?

113 'When', 'once', 'if' – to

To is slightly different from toki since it is used to translate 'whenever ...'; 'when/once/if ..., (then inevitably) ...'. With to, the verb may be in either the plain or masu form.

To is only used with the present. Also to will often be followed by some adverb such as itsumo ('always') or kanarazu ('inevitably'). Study carefully these examples:

Whenever I phone her she's out.

Kanojo ni denwa suru to
itsumo rusu desu.

Whenever I went to that coffee shop I bumped into him.

Ano kissaten ni iku to
kanarazu kare ni
deaimashita.

When (once) you start to learn Japanese you can't stop.

Nihongo o narai-hajimeru
to yamerarenaku
narimasu.

Once I've got into the swing of things, I'm O.K.
If you turn left here you can't miss it.

Chōshi ga deru to daijōbu
desu yo.
Koko o hidari e magarimasu
to sugu wakarimasu.

'As soon as' may be expressed by ... to *sugu* ... (or *te kara sugu*):

Let's check in as soon as we get to the airport.

As soon as I got home, I made a meal and went to bed.

Kūkō ni tsuku to *sugu* chekku-in shimashō.
Uchi e kaette kara *sugu* gohan o tsukutte nemashita.

114 'Just about to'; 'has/have just'

The noun tokoro is used to say 'just about to ...', 'has just ...'. It may be used with the adverbs ima ('just now') and/or chōdo ('just'). Study the following, noting the tenses:

We're about to go home now.
I was just about to phone.

Mō kaeru tokoro desu.
Chōdo denwa o kakeru tokoro deshita.

I've just got back.

Ima chōdo kaette kita tokoro desu.

I had just started to learn Japanese then.

Sono toki wa Nihongo o narai-hajimeta tokoro deshita.

In order to say, for example, 'just as I was about to go out, the phone rang', the plain form of mashō (see Chapter 11) plus to suru is generally used with tokoro, to, or toki. Study the following:

I was just about to go out when the phone rang.

Chōdo dekakeyō to suru tokoro (e) denwa ga narimashita.

Just as I was about to go to bed the bomb went off.

Chōdo neyō to suru to bakudan ga bakuhatsu shita n'desu.

I was just about to phone the police, when she came back.

Chōdo keisatsu ni denwa shiyō to shita toki ni kanojo ga kaette kita n'desu.

Note here these other miscellaneous expressions involving *tokoro*:

I saw the cars collide.

Kuruma ga shōtotsu suru
tokoro o mimashita.

Recently I've been really busy.

Kono tokoro sugoku
isogashii n'desu.

115 Some other common time expressions

'Until' – *made*:

*I shan't go to bed until I've learnt it off by heart.
Wait until you're a bit bigger.*

Kore o anki suru made
nemasen.
Mō chotto ōkiku naru made
matte kudasai.

'In the middle of' – *saichū*:

*I'm in the middle of writing a letter.
I was in the middle of reading the comic.*

Tegami o kaite iru saichū
desu.
Manga o yonde iru saichū
deshita.

'Whenever' – *tabi*:

This is synonymous with ... to *itsumo* ...:

Whenever I go by train I leave something behind.

Densha ni noru tabi ni
nanika wasuremono o
shimasu yo.

'Before' – *uchi*:

'Before' will be translated by *uchi* plus a negative (rather than *mae*) when the idea is that 'something is going to happen soon, but before it does ...':

Let's tidy up before Mum gets home.

Okāsan ga kaette konai uchi
ni sōji shimashō ne.
Samenai uchi ni tabete
kudasai.

Eat it before it gets cold.

'As far as ...', 'as long as ...' – *kagiri*:

As far as I (can) remember, he's not married.

As long as you tell no one, I don't mind.

Watashi ga oboete iru kagiri
kare wa mada kekkon
shite imasen yo.
Dare ni mo iwanai kagiri
kamaimasen.

Exercise 31

Put into Japanese:

- 1 What are you going to be doing while you're over here?
- 2 When I saw the girl he was going out with, I knew why he loved her.
- 3 Once you get to Japan, you won't want to come back home again.
- 4 I haven't eaten sushi for a long time.
- 5 Whenever I drink whisky and wine I get a hangover.

CONVERSATION 17A

Climbing Mt. Fuji

Mr Brown has been invited to the Inoues' for dinner and is telling them what he'd like to do before leaving Japan:

Mrs I: Jon-san, shokuji no yōi ga dekimashita.
Samenai uchi ni dōzo o-meshiagari kudasai¹.

B: Itadakimasu.

Mrs I: Hai, dōzo.

Mr I: Jon-san, kikoku suru made ato wazuka² desu ne. Nihon o tatsu mae ni hoka ni shitai koto toka ikitai tokoro wa nai desu ka.

B: Arimasu. Kono mae shinkansen ni notte Fuji-san no mae o töitta toki ni zehi ichido nobotte mitai³ to omoimashita ga.

Mr I: Sō desu ka. Sore wa ii kangaе desu ne.

B: Inoue-san wa nobotta koto wa arimasu ka.

Mr I: Wakai toki ni ichido dake arimasu yo.

B: Dō deshita ka. Yokatta desu ka.

Mr I: Nobotta ato no kimochi wa totomo yokatta desu ga nobotte iru aida wa katta tsura desu ne.

B: Sō desu ka. Igirisu ni kaeru mae ni zehi ichido nobotte mitai desu ne ... Gochisō-sama deshita.

Mrs I: O-somatsu-sama deshita.

CONVERSATION 17B

A Japanese lesson

The teacher (S) asks Tom (T), John (J) and Mary (M) some questions:

S: Kyō wa 'mae', 'ato', 'toki', 'to' nado no renshū o shimashō ne. Mazu 'mae' o tsukatte bunshō o tsukutte mimashō. Hai, Tomu-san, nandemo ii desu kara dōzo.

T: Etto, 'Nihon ni kuru mae wa Nihongo wa dekinakatta n'desu ga ima wa sukoshi dekiru yō ni narimashita.'

S: Ii desu ne. Kondo wa 'ato' o tsukatte bunshō o tsukutte mite kudasai.

J: 'Jugyō ga owatta ato de tomodachi to bā ni ikimasu. Sono ato ni mō hitotsu no bā e ikimasu.'

S: Kekkō desu⁴. Tsugi wa 'toki' desu ne.

M: 'Kono mae bā e itta toki ni o-sake o nondari uta o utattari shimashita.'⁵

S: Ii desu yo.

T: Mō hitotsu tsukutte ii desu ka.

S: Hai, dōzo.

T: 'Chōdo ie o deyō to shita toki ni Merī kara denwa ga arimashita.'

S: Totemo ii bunshō desu ne. Saigo ni 'to' no renshū desu ne. Hai, Jon-san.

J: 'Jugyō ga owaru to itsumo tomodachi to nomi ni ikimasu. Soshite, nomi ni iku to itsumo yopparatte kaette kimasu.'

S: Ii desu ne.

Chapter 18

Notes:

1. o-meshiagari kudasai: 'please eat'; meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu is an honorific form of both taberu/tabemasu and nomu/nomimasu and is therefore used only of others to whom one wishes to show special respect; the form o-meshiagari kudasai is an honorific imperative. See Chapter 20.
2. ato wazuka: 'there's only a little time left'.
3. nobotte mitai: the te form plus miru/mimasu means 'do something and see' or 'try doing'.
4. Kekkō desu: here it means 'that'll do nicely'.
5. o-sake o nondari, uta o utattari shimashita: 'I drank alcohol and sang songs'; when describing a series of actions which are not consecutive the so-called tari form is used. This is formed by adding ri to the ta form. Usually the last of a series of tari forms is followed by suru/shimasu: terebi o mitari toranpu o shitari shimashita, 'I watched the TV and played cards.'

MAIN POINTS:

If clauses; some related expressions.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) 'What should I do?' (b) 'We should have taken a taxi!'

116 'If' – the *ba* form

Before considering the applications of the various 'if' forms, we must study their formation:

(1) The *ba* form of verbs

All verbs (except da/desu) have their *ba* form made in the same way: the final syllable, -u, -ku, -gu, -su, -tsu, -nu, -bu, -mu, -ru (see column 3 of the table on page 8), is changed to the corresponding syllable in column 4:

arau → arae
kaku → kake
oyogu → oyoge
taberu → tabere

To this *ba* is added. Check you can make the *ba* forms of the following:

yomu	→	yomeba
kuru	→	kureba
suru	→	sureba
deru	→	dereba
matsu	→	mateba
iu	→	ieba

Da/desu does not have a ba form. Instead, nara is used, both with nouns and na adjectives; 'If I were you' (lit. 'if it were me') is **watashi nara**; 'if I'm free' is **hima nara**.

(2) The ba form of i adjectives, of the tai form, and of negatives

In all these cases, the final i syllable is changed to -kereba. Check you can make the ba form of the following:

atakai	→ atatakakereba
suzushii	suzushikereba
ikitai	ikitakereba
konai	konakereba
shitaku nai	shitaku nakereba
ja nai	ja nakereba
oishii	oishikereba
oishiku nai	oishiku nakereba

117 'If' – the tara form

The tara form of ALL verbs, without exception, is made by adding -ra to the ta form. Check you know the tara forms of the following:

iku	→ ittara
iru ('be')	itarra
suru	shitara
da	dattara
kuru	kitara

While this tara form is found in polite speech, an extra degree of politeness is given by adding -ra to the mashita form of any verb:

arimashita	→ arimashitara
irasshaimashita	irasshaimashitara
deshita	deshitara

The tara form of i adjectives, of the -tai form and of the negative is made by adding -ra to their past tense. Check you know the tara form of the following:

atsui	→ atsukattara
kaeritai	kaeritakkattara
ōkii	ōkikkattara
dekinai	dekinakattara
nai	nakattara
oishiku nai	oishiku nakattara

118 'If' – application

Study the following examples, paying particular attention to the tenses:

If the plane crashes, we will all die, won't we?
Hikoki ga tsuiraku sureba (shitaru) minna shinimasu ne.

If the bomb blew up on the plane, (the plane) would crash.
Hikoki no naka de bakudan ga bakuhatsu sureba (shitaru) tsuiraku suru deshō.

If the wing were to come off, the plane couldn't fly.
Tsubasa ga torerera (toretara) hikoki ga tobenaku naru deshō.

If they hadn't shot the terrorist, she would have escaped.
Terorisuto o uchikorosanakattara nigeta deshō.

Moshi very frequently introduces 'if' clauses of all types:

If it's no good what shall we do? Moshi dame dattara dō shimashō.

If I hadn't run I wouldn't have fallen over.
Moshi hashiranakattara korobanakatta deshō.

Another common type of 'if' clause has n'dattara or, more politely, n'deshitara attached to a present or past plain form. The meaning is 'if, in fact, ...', or 'if it's the case that ...':

If you are in fact coming to London do let me know.
Moshi Rondon ni irassharu n'deshitara oshiete kudasai.

If it's the case that he's decided to give up Japanese, what shall we do?
Moshi Nihongo o yameru koto ni shita n'dattara dō shimashō ka.

In many of the examples given above *deshō* has followed the final verb, but there are various other possibilities, such as *ka mo shiremasen*, or *darō to omoimasu*.

Exercise 32

Put into Japanese:

- 1 If I were you, I think I'd refuse.
- 2 If it rains tomorrow, let's not go.
- 3 If you had come ten minutes earlier, you might have caught the train.
- 4 If it's clean and new I'll buy it.
- 5 If you were to phone him now, he'll probably be in.

119 Miscellaneous expressions with *tara* and *ba*

Suggestions are commonly made with the *tara* form plus *dō* or, where extra politeness is demanded, *ikaga*:

Why don't you come along too? Issho ni kitara dō desu ka,
Kunio?
Why don't you go too, Professor? Issho ni irasshaimashitara
ikaga desu ka Sensei?

Asking what one should do, where one should go, etc. may be done with either the *tara* form or the *ba* form followed by *ii desu ka* (lit. 'it'll be good if we do what/go where?'). Note also how to say, for example, 'I don't know what to say':

What should I say to him?

I don't know what to say.

A: How should I explain it?

B: I'm not sure how you should explain it.

Note that 'I wish ...', 'I hope ...' is *ii n'desu (ga) (ne)* added to one of the 'if' forms:

I wish it would finish quickly.

I wish it were cheaper.

I hope I don't have to go.

I wish he hadn't come.

I wish he hadn't said that.

I hope they're on time.

Nani o ittara (ieba) ii desu ka.

Nani o ittara ii ka wakarimasen.

Dō setsumei shitara (sureba) ii desu ka.

Dō setsumei shitara ii ka chotto wakarimasen.

Hayaku owattara ii n'desu ga ne.

Mō chotto yasukereba ii n'desu ga.

Ikanakute mo ii n'dattara ii n'desu ga.

Ano hito ga konakattara yokatta n'desu ga ne.

Sore o iwanakereba yokatta n'desu ne.

Ma ni aeba ii n'desu ga.

Expressions of the type 'the more ... the more ...' are made with the form *sureba suru hodo* ... (lit. 'if one does something, to the extent one does it, it is ...'). Study carefully the following:

*The more you speak in Japanese,
the more fluent you'll become.*

*Nihongo de hanaseba
hanasu hodo perapera ni
narimasu yo.*

*The more nuclear weapons
there are, the more dangerous
the world becomes.*

*Kakuheiki ga ōku nareba
naru hodo kono yo no
naka ga abunaku
narimasu ne.*

*The less you eat the thinner
you'll get.*

*Tabenakereba tabenai hodo
hosoku narimasu.*

It should also be noted that the tara form is frequently used (1) to mean 'when', and (2) in negative 'must' clauses. Pay attention to the tenses:

When you've finished please tell me.

When I woke up this morning I had a bad headache.

He said you mustn't talk.

You mustn't smoke here.

Owattara oshiete kudasai.

Kesa okitara atama ga sugoku itakatta n'desu.

Hanashitara dame da to itte imashita.

Koko de tabako o suttara dame desu yo.

Exercise 33

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Why don't you learn how to write Japanese as well?
- 2 I didn't know what to do or where to go.
- 3 I hope the weather'll get better tomorrow.
- 4 I wish I hadn't bought that car.
- 5 The longer you stay in Japan, the more you'll get to like it.

CONVERSATION 18A

'What should I do?'

Mr Brown asks Mr Inoue how he can improve his Japanese fluency:

- B: Inoue-san, Nihon ni kite kara mō sankagetsu tatte iru¹ no ni Nihongo ga zenzen jōtatsu shite inai yō na ki ga shimasu ga.
- I: Jōtatsu shite inai wake ja nai desu yo². De mo, mō ni, san-kagetsu shitara³ kitto motto umaku naru to omoimasu.
- B: Demo motto hayaku jōzu ni naru ni wa dō shitara ii to omoimasu ka.
- I: Sō desu ne. Tango no mondai nara mainichi nyūsu o kiite, shiranai kotoba o minna kakitottara dō desu ka. Sō sureba tango no kazu ga fueru deshō.
- B: De mo, dō shitara motto ryūchō ni shabereru yō ni naru no deshō.
- I: Sore wa jikan no mondai desu ne.
- B: Nihon ni kuru mae ni motto benkyō shite okeba⁴ yokatta n'desu ne.

CONVERSATION 18B

'We should have taken a taxi!'

Mr Inoue and Mr Brown are looking for an address:

- B: Moshi takushī de itta n'dattara mō tsuite ita ka mo shiremasen ne.
- I: Iya, mō sugu tsukimasu.
- B: Demo chizu o kaite moraeba yokatta n'ja nai desu ka.
- I: Iya, chizu nanka¹ irimasen ... Koko wa Aoyamadōri deshō. Soshitara koko o massugu itte, mittsume no shingō o hidari ni magaru to 2 ban da to omoimasu yo.
- B: Sō desu ka. Demo dareka ni kiite mitara dō desu ka.
- I: Ii desu. Ii desu². Sugū chikaku desu kara ...

After a short while, they're lost:

- B: Yappari futatsume no shingō o magareba yokatta n'ja nai desu ka.
- I: Sō ka mo shiremasen ne. Ato gofun gurai shite mitsukaranakattara takushī o hiroimashō ne.
- B: (to himself) Attara ne.

Five minutes later, to a taxi driver:

- I: Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō³ made o-negai shimasu.

Notes:

1. kara sankagetsu tatte iru: 'three months have passed since ...', 'I've been here for three months'. Tatsu/tachimasu means 'pass' (of time).
2. wake ja nai desu: 'it's not the case that'.
3. ni, san-kagetsu shitara: 'in another two or three months', lit. 'if/when another two or three months have passed'; suru/shimasu here is used like tatsu/tachimasu.
4. benkō shite okeba yokatta: 'I should have studied'; when an action is performed for some future event te oku/okimasu is often used. Among very common phrases involving te oku/okimasu are kangaete okimashō ('Let's think about it') and (asoko ni) oite oite kudasai ('Leave it there').
5. chizu nan ka: 'a map or anything', informal.
6. Ii desu, ii desu: 'it's fine as it is', 'we don't need to (ask anyone)'.
7. Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō: the full address would be Tōkyō-to, Minato-ku, Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō; very few streets have street names in Japan, and the best way to reach your destination is by asking a policeman! The address system in Japan works in sections rather than streets and begins with the largest unit, here Tōkyō city; Minato-ku (Minato 'ward') is a section of Tokyo; Aoyama is a section of Minato, 1 chōme (itchōme) is a section of Aoyama, 2 ban is a subsection of 1 chōme, and 6 gō is the 6th plot in 2 ban.

Chapter 19

MAIN POINTS:

The passive, the causative and the passive causative.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A hangover; (b) An arranged marriage.

120 The passive (i)

The passive is formed in the case of all verbs (except *suru/shimasu*) from the negative plain form. Study the following:

Group 1 verbs require *rareru*:

tabenai → *tabe* → *taberareru*
minai → *mi* → *mirareru*

Group 2 verbs require *reru*:

kakanai → *kaka* → *kakareru*
shiranai → *shira* → *shirareru*
kawanai → *kawa* → *kawareru*

Irregular verbs:

konai → *ko* → *korareru*
suru/shimasu → *sareru*

The passives of all verbs now function as Group 1 verbs.

121 The passive (ii)

As in English, the Japanese passive is used with transitive verbs. The human agent of the action, when expressed, is generally followed by *ni*. Consider the following:

I hear that the reporter was kidnapped by terrorists.
The politician was arrested by the police.
I was told off by the boss.

Ano kisha wa terorisuto ni yūkai sareta sō desu.
Ano seijika wa keisatsu ni taiho saremashita.
Bosu ni shikararemashita.

The passive is used frequently with verbs of asking and saying, where English may not always use a passive:

They asked me (J: I was asked) to interpret.
We were told to be there by twelve, you know.
Who told you?

Tsūyaku suru yō ni fanomaremashita.
Jūniji made ni kuru yō ni iwareta n'desu yo.
Dare ni iwareta n'desu ka.

The agent of the passive verb can also be followed by *ni yotte* (lit. 'by means of') or *kara* ('from'), particularly when the use of *ni* may lead to ambiguities:

I was invited to the party by my friend.
It's a book written by Mishima.

Tomodachi kara pātei ni shōtai sareta n'desu.
Mishima ni yotte kakareta hon desu.

122 The passive (iii)

There are two other important uses of the passive. The first is sometimes called the 'passive of inconvenience' because it is often, but not always, used in the sense of 'having something done to one against one's will'. Study carefully the following pairs of sentences:

(He) asked me lots of things.

I was asked lots of things
(by him).

(They) checked my baggage.
I had my baggage checked.

Somebody stole my passport.

I had my passport stolen.

He corrected my Japanese.

I had my Japanese corrected.

Takusan no koto o
kikimashita.

Kare ni takusan no koto o
kikaremashita.

Nimotsu o shirabemashita.
Nimotsu o
shiraberaremashita.

Dareka ga watashi no
pasupōto o
nusumimashita.

Pasupōto o
nusumaremashita.

Nihongo o naoshimashita
(or naoshite kuremashita).

Nihongo o naosaremashita.

The second special use of the passive is with intransitive verbs. This passive also often expresses 'inconvenience'. Study carefully the following pairs of sentences, of which the first is neutral:

His father died.
He suffered the death of his father.

A visitor came.
A visitor came (it was inconvenient) (J: I was 'come' by a visitor).

The baby kept crying.

The baby kept crying (it was inconvenient) (J: I was 'kept cried' by the baby).

Otōsan ga shinimashita.
Otōsan ni shinaremashita.

O-kyaku-san ga kimashita.
O-kyaku-san ni
koraremashita.

Akachan ga zutto naite
imashita.
Akachan ni zutto nakarete
imashita.

Exercise 34

Put into Japanese:

- Our house was broken into (J: entered) by a burglar.
- I had my fingerprints taken when I went to get my Alien Registration Card.
- We were all told off for being late.
- I was asked why I gave up Japanese.
- He was told he would probably soon die.

123 The passive (iv)

'Has been done' ('is in a state of having been done') is translated not by a passive but by *te aru/arimasu*:

Has the beer been bought?
Everybody's been told.
The letter has been sent.

Biru wa katte aru n'desu ka.
Minna ni itte arimasu yo.
Tegami wa okutte arimasu.

Note here the use of *kaite aru/arimasu*:

A: What does it say on that signpost?

B: It says 'No entry'.

It says in the dictionary
'foreigner'.

Ano hyōshiki ni wa nan to
kalte aru n'desu ka.

Shinnyū kinshi to kaite aru
n'desu.

Jisho ni wa 'gaijin' to kaite
arimasu.

124 Transitive and intransitive verbs

It will be useful to mention here related pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs and some of their uses. First study the pairs in the following, by no means comprehensive, list:

open vt.	akeru / akemasu	(be) open	aku / akimasu
collect vt.	atsumeru / atsumemasu	collect, (be) collected	atsumaru / atsumarimasu
put in vt.	ireru / iremasu	go in	hairu / hairimasu
close vt.	shimeru / shimemasu	(be) close(d)	shimaru / shimarimasu
stop vt.	tomeru / tomemasu	stop, stay	tomaru / tomarimasu
attach, turn on vt.	tsukeru / tsukemasu	(be) attached to, go on	tsuku / tsukimasu
build vt.	tateru / tatemasu	stand	tatsu / tachimasu
convey vt.	tsutaeru / tsutaemasu	(be) convey(ed)	tsutawaru / tsutawari- masu
hand over vt.	watasu / watashimasu	cross over	wataru / watarimasu

Care is needed in the use of these verbs. Study the examples with three of the most common of these pairs:

I'll open the door.
The door won't open.
I'm opening the door.
The door is open.
Has the door been opened?

I'll put it in.
It won't go in (fit).
I'm putting it in.
It is in.
Has it been put in?

I'll turn the radio on.
The radio won't go on.
I'm putting the radio on.
The radio is on.
Has the radio been put on?

Doa o akemasu.
Doa wa akimasen.
Doa o akete imasu.
Doa wa aite imasu.
Doa wa akete arimasu ka.

Iremasu.
Hairimasen.
Irete imasu.
Haitte imasu.
Irete arimasu ka.

Rajio o tsukemasu.
Rajio wa tsukimasen.
Rajio o tsukete imasu.
Rajio wa tsuite imasu.
Rajio wa tsukete arimasu ka.

The difference between aite iru and akete aru, between haitte iru and irete aru, and between tsuite iru and tsukete aru is that while both the former and the latter in each case describe a state, the latter implies more emphatically the existence of an agent.

125 The causative (i)

The causatives of all verbs (except suru / shimasu) are conveniently formed from the negative plain form:

Group 1 verbs require saseru:

tabenai → tabe → tabesaseru
tsukenai → tsuke → tsukesaseru

Group 2 verbs require seru:

ikanai → ika → ikaseru
yomanai → yoma → yomaseru
kawanai → kawa → kawaseru

Irregular verbs:

konai → ko → kosaseru
suru / shimasu → saseru

126 The causative (ii)

There are two uses of the causative. The first is 'let somebody do ...'. The second is 'make somebody do ...'. The object of the letting or making is always an inferior of the speaker.

When the verb is intransitive and the object of the letting or making is expressed, the difference is often brought out by the use of the particle *o* for 'make', and the particle *ni* for 'let'. Consider the following:

You must make your husband work more.

Please don't make me laugh.

You shouldn't cause people trouble.

Let him go. (e.g. to the shop)

Danna-san o motto
hatarakasenakereba
narimasen.

Watashi o warawasenaide
kudasai.

Hito o komarasete wa
ikemasen.

Kare ni ikasete kudasai.

When the verb is transitive even if the person is being made to do something, rather than allowed to do something, that person is followed by the particle *ni*. The context will make it clear to the listener what is intended. Consider the following:

I don't want to let my daughter read those comics.

You should make your husband wash the dishes.

Musume ni sonna manga o
yomasetaku nai desu yo.

Danna-san ni o-sara o
arawaseta hō ga ii desu yo.

127 The causative (iii)

The causative is used with *kudasaru/kudasaimasu* (and *kureru/kuremasu*) and *itadaku/itadakimasu* (and *morau/moraimasu*), in order to ask permission in a polite way, either from persons of superior status or from persons to whom one wishes, for whatever reason, to show respect:

Please let me do it (for you).

May I (J: Would you be kind enough to let me) use the phone?

I should like to (J: I'd like to get you to let me) say a word.

May I (J: can I get you to let me) take tomorrow off?

Dōzo sō sasete kudasai.

Denwa o tsukawasete
kudasaimasu ka.

Hitokoto iwasete
itadakitai n'desu.

Ashita yasumasete
itadakemasu ka.

128 The passive causative

The passive causative (i.e. 'is made to', 'is allowed to') of all verbs is formed from the causative, but the most common form for Group 2 verbs is not quite the same as that for Group 1 verbs.

Group 1 verbs:

tabesaseru → tabesase → tabesaserareru
misaseru → misase → misaserareru

Group 2 verbs:

ikasen → ika → ikasareru
kakaseru → kaka → kakasareru

Irregular verbs:

saseru → sase → saserareru
kosaseru → kosase → kosaserareru

I was made to speak in Japanese. Nihongo de hanasasareta
n'desu yo.

They were made to sit cross-legged for hours.
Did you want to marry her or were you made to?

Nanjikanmo agura o
kakasaremashita.
Kanojo to kekkon
shitakatta n'desu ka
soretomo kekkon
saserareta n'desu ka.

Exercise 35

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Is the light on?' 'No, it won't go on.'
- 2 The window has been opened. Who opened it, I wonder?
- 3 We were made to pay for (the cost of) everybody's drinks.
- 4 It says that all the trains will be late.
- 5 I didn't want to go but I was made to.
- 6 Even if he doesn't want to do it, we'll have to make him.

CONVERSATION 19A

A hangover

Mr Brown tells Mr Inoue about his evening in a karaoke bar.

- B: Ohayō gozaimasu.
I: Ohayō. Buraun-san dō shita n'desu ka. Mata futsuka-yoi mitai desu ne.
B: Sō desu. Sakuya tomodachi ni karaoke bā' e tsurete ikareta n'desu.
I: Omoshirokatta deshō, karaoke wa.
B: Sō desu ne. De mo utaitaku nai to itta no ni utawasareta n'desu. Ikura onchi da to itte mo Igirisu no uta o kikasete kure to iwarete, kolowaru to okoraresō na ki ga shite 'Gurīn Suribusu' o utaimashita.
I: Uketa deshō.
B: Uketa mitai desu ne. Demo hidokatta desu yo. Nomitaku nakutemo' nomasareru n'desu kara.
I: Mō chotto tsuyoku naranai to dame desu ne, Jon-san.

CONVERSATION 19B

An arranged marriage

Yumiko explains to Mr Brown why she's crying:

- B: Dōshite naite iru n'desu ka.
Y: Chichi ga kaigai ryūgaku o sasete kurenai to itta n'desu.
B: Dōshite kyū ni dame da to iwareta n'desu ka.
Y: Chichi wa watashi ni gakkō o sotsugyō shitara hanayome shugyō o saseru tsumori nan desu.
B: Hanayome shugyō tte?
Y: O-cha ya o-hana sore ni ryōri o narattari shite kekkon no junbi o suru koto desu.
B: Kelkon no junbi desu ka. Demo Yumiko wa aite ga iru n'desu ka.
Y: Īe, o-miai o saserareru n'desu.
B: O-miai desu ka. Sore ja, dō suru n'desu ka.
Y: Yappari iwareru tōri ni⁴ shinai to dame mitai desu ne.

Notes:

1. karaoke: lit. 'empty (kara) orchestra (oke)'.
2. nomitaku nakutemo: 'even though I didn't want to drink'; the te plus mo means 'even if', 'even though'.
3. tte: 'what do you mean by ...'; tte is an abbreviation of to iu koto wa. See Chapter 20.
4. iwareru tōri ni: 'as I am told'.

Chapter 20

MAIN POINTS:

Informal and honorific language – a summary.

CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Out shopping; (b) A telephone message.

129 Informal Japanese

A few of the characteristics of informal speech are dealt with here principally to enable you to understand it when it is spoken either to you or in your presence. Informal speech is used in informal situations when addressing family members, close friends and social inferiors. It is not used in more formal situations and never used when addressing strangers or people of superior status. The speaker has to judge for him or herself when informal speech is permissible.

There are various features of informal speech. Omission, particularly of particles, is common and abbreviated forms are also very common. The most characteristic feature, though, is the use of the plain form of verbs and adjectives. In each case below only a small selection of the many possibilities has been given.

130 Plain forms

In informal speech note that (a) with nouns and na adjectives, da is frequently omitted; (b) in requests ka is often omitted, and no may replace it; (c) no (ka) is used as the plain form of n'desu (ka). Study the following pairs:

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| <i>A: Are you off now?</i> | Mō kaeru? |
| <i>B: Yeah, I'm off.</i> | N, kaeru. |
| <i>A: Is it tomorrow?</i> | Ashita? |
| <i>B: It's tomorrow, it seems.</i> | Ashita mitai yo. |
| <i>A: Is she pretty?</i> | Kirei na no*? |
| <i>B: Yep.</i> | Kirei da* yo. |
| <i>A: What's up?</i> | Dō shita no? |
| <i>B: I've hurt my leg.</i> | Ashi ga itakute. |
| <i>A: That's expensive, isn't it?</i> | Are wa takai ne. |
| <i>B: Yep, that is expensive.</i> | N, takai (no)* yo. |
| <i>A: Shall we go out for a drink?</i> | Nomi ni ikō. |
| <i>B: Yeah, let's.</i> | N, ikō. |
| <i>A: What's that?</i> | Are wa nani? |
| <i>B: I don't know.</i> | Shiranai. |
| <i>A: Who's that?</i> | Ano hito wa dare? |
| <i>B: I wonder.</i> | Dare darō? |
| <i>A: It's useless, isn't it?</i> | Dame da* ne. |
| <i>B: Yep, it's useless.</i> | N, dame da* yo. |
| <i>A: You've understood, haven't you?</i> | Wakatta ne? |
| <i>B: I've got it.</i> | N, wakatta wa*. |

* da will be omitted in women's informal speech
no is particularly characteristic of women's informal speech
wa is characteristic of women's speech

131 Omission

In informal speech, particles *wa*, *ga*, *o*, *ni*, *e* may be omitted provided that the meaning remains clear; *kudasai* in imperatives may be omitted; entire clauses after conjunctions like *kara* and *ga* may be omitted; other omissions are also possible. Consider the following pairs with particles omitted:

- A: I'll do it.
B: Really?
A: What's that?
B: I don't know.
A: Can you write? (e.g. Japanese)
B: Yes.
A: It feels good, doesn't it?
B: It does, doesn't it?
A: What're you doing?
B: I'm reading.
A: Where are you going?
B: Nowhere.
- Watashi yaru.
Sō?
Are nani?
Wakaranai.
Kaku koto dekiru?
Dekiru yo.
Kimochi ii ne.
Kimochi ii ne.
Nani shite'ru?
Hon yonde'ru.
Doko iku?
Doko mo ikanai yo.

Imperatives without *kudasai*:

- Don't (j: stop)!
Come here!
Drink this!
- Yamete.
Kotchi kite.
Kore nonde.

Clauses omitted:

- A: Have you got any money?
B: Yes, I have; (e.g., why do you ask?).
I want to be off early tomorrow (so e.g. I need an early night tonight).
I must be off now.
Why don't you go to sleep straight away?
Don't forget.
- O-kane aru ka.
Aru kedo ...
Ashita hayaku dekaketai kara ...
Mō kaeranakucha ... (e.g. narimasen)
Sugu netara (e.g. dō desu ka)?
Wasurenai yō ni ... (e.g. chūi shite kudasai)

132 Abbreviations

Here is a selection of common abbreviations, some of which have been covered above. The non-abbreviated form is given in brackets:

- You mustn't eat that.
O. K. then, let's go.
I don't want anything.
What're you doing?
I'm not doing anything.
I was waiting for hours.
- I'll leave it there.
I'll make it for you.
Even I can't do it.
- Where did he say he was going?
What does o-miae mean?
- Tabecha (te wa) dame yo.
Sore ja (de wa) ikō ka.
Nanimo iran (iranai).
Nani shite'ru (te iru)?
Nanimo shite'nai (te inai).
Nanjikan mo matte'ta (te ita) yo.
Asoko ni oit'oku (te oku).
Tsukutt'ageru (te ageru).
Watashi datte (de mo) dekinai.
Doko iku'tte (to itta/itte ita)?
O-miae'tte (to iu no wa)?

Finally note that in informal Japanese there are some alternatives for 'I' and 'you': 'I' (in men's speech only) may be *boku* or *ore*; 'you' may be *kimi* or *o-mae*.

CONVERSATION 20A

Out shopping

A boy (B) and his girlfriend (A) buy some clothes:

- A: Kore haite mitara?
B: Kore?! Jōdan! Konna no iran!
A: Dō shite? Ii no ni'.
B: Shumi ja nai yo. Kore dō?
A: Ii yo. Haite miru?
B: N, haite miyō.

Several minutes later:

- B: Chotto nagai n' ja nai?
A: Sonna koto nai wa yo. Chōdo ii n'ja nai no?
B: Ja, kaō ka ... Sumimasen, kore (o) o-negai shimasu.
X: Hai, yonsen en de gozaimasu ... chōdo yonsen en o-azukari itashimasu.
B: Yokatta ne. Kōcha demo nomi ni ikō ka.

Notes:

1. ii no ni: 'they're nice'; no ni expresses regret.

133 Honorific Japanese

Here it will be possible to touch on only a few of the more common features of honorific speech. Honorific language will be used when you wish to show respect, appreciation or concern, especially to the person you are talking to but also to the person you are talking about. Two types of honorific language may be distinguished: 'deferential' and 'humble'. Deferential language involves 'elevating' the person spoken to (or about) by certain verbs or verb forms; humble language involves the speaker 'lowering' himself or others out of respect for the person spoken to (or about) by the use of certain verbs and verb forms. Many of these have already appeared in conversations above.

134 Deferential & humble verbs and verb forms

Consider first some common verbs which have deferential and humble alternatives:

<i>Neutral</i>	<i>Deferential</i>	<i>Humble</i>
iru/imasu	irassharu/ irasshaimasu	oru/orimasu
iku/ikimasu kuru/kimasu	irassharu/ irasshaimasu oide ni naru/ narimasu	mairu/ mairimashita ukagau/ ukagaimasu
suru/shimasu iu/iimasu	nasaru/nasaimasu ossharu/ osshaimasu	itasu/itashimasu mōsu/ mōshimasu
taberu/tabemasu nomu/nomimasu	meshiagaru/ meshiagarimasu	itadaku/ itadakimasu
miru/mimasu	goran ni naru/ narimasu	haiken itasu/ itashimasu
kiku/kikimasu	(o-kiki ni naru/ narimasu)	ukagau/ ukagaimasu
shiru/shrimasu	gozonji desu	zonjiru/ zonjimasu

(Brackets indicate verbs that can take more than one form; e.g. iku/ikumasu can be either irassharu/irasshaimasu or oide ni naru/narimasu in its deferential form.)

Those verbs which do not have special deferential or humble forms can be made deferential or humble in various ways, the most common being as follows. Note that the passive is frequently used as a deferential form:

<i>Neutral</i>	<i>Deferential</i>	<i>Humble</i>
kaku/kakimasu	o-kaki ni naru/ narimasu	o-kaki suru/ shimasu
kaku/kakimasu yomu/yomimasu	kakareru/kakaremasu o-yomi ni naru/ narimasu	o-yomi suru/ shimasu
yomu/yomimasu	yomareru/ yomaremasu	

Study the following:

This is the book the Professor wrote.

You know when it is, don't you? What did he say?
I'm not doing anything.
I've met you before.

Do start (your meal)!
What do you think, Professor?

When will he be going home?

I wonder if you could help me
(I: I should like to inquire) ...

Remember the use of **itadaku/itadakimasu** in honorific language:

I should like to take you around
Nara.

May I use the phone?

Would you be kind enough to
wait just a little longer?

Honorific imperatives you should be able to recognize:

Please wait a minute.

Please start!

Please take a seat.

Kore wa Sensei ga o-kaki ni
natta hon desu.

Itsu ka go-zonji desu ne.
Nan to osshaimashita ka.
Nanimo shite orimasen.
Mae ni o-me ni
kakarimashita.

Dōzo meshiagatte kudasai.
Sensei, dō omowaremasu
ka.

Itsu o-kaeri ni naru n'desu
ka.

O-tazune shimasu ga ...

Nara o (go-)jannai sasete
itadakitai n'desu ga.

Denwa o tsukawasete
itadakemasu ka.

Mō sukoshi matte
itadakemasen ka.

Shōshō o-machi kudasai.

O-meshiagari kudasai.

Dōzo o-kake kudasai.

Is this O.K.?

Who are you (who's speaking)?

What are you studying?

When did you get married?

A: Will you eat here?

B: No, I'll take it away.

Kore de yoroshii desu ka.

Dochira sama de
irasshaimasu ka.

Nani o go-benkyō nasatte
iru n'desu ka.

Itsu go-kekkon
nasaimashita ka.

Kochira de o-meshiagari
desu ka.

Îe, motte kaerimasu.

Note too some examples of adjectives preceded by o:

I'm sure you are very busy,
but ...

You are young, aren't you?

O-isogashii deshō ga ...

O-wakai desu ne.

Before finishing this chapter you are advised to refer back to the following Conversations which contain various examples of honorific speech: 2c, 3a, 4a, 5c, 7b, 9a,b, 10b, 14a, 17a.

CONVERSATION 20B

A telephone message

Mr Tanaka (A) talks to a secretary (B):

A: Yoshida-san wa irasshaimasu¹ deshō ka.

B: Dochira-sama de irasshaimasu ka.

A: Tanaka to mōshimasu ga.

B: Shōshō o-machi kudasai ... Tadaima seki o
hazushite orimasu ga ...

A: Sō desu ka. O-kotozuke o o-negai dékimasu¹
deshō ka.

B: Hai dōzo.

A: Ashita 11ji goro o-ukagai shimasu² no de sō
osshatte kudasai.

B: Kashikomarimashita. O-tsutae itashimasu.

135 Honorific nouns and adjectives

Nouns and adjectives too have honorific forms. Some nouns and adjectives have honorific alternatives: hito becomes kata; dare becomes donata or dochirasama; doko becomes dochira; ii becomes yoroshii. Some nouns are made honorific, as you know, by placing either go or o in front of them. Some adjectives are made honorific by placing o before them. A number of verbs are regularly preceded, in honorific speech, by o and followed by desu: dekakeru → o-dekake desu. Study the examples below:

Notes:

- masu deshō ka: in honorific speech masu forms are commonly used where plain forms would otherwise be adequate.
- o-ukagai shimasu: here it means 'I shall visit'.

Key to Exercises

Exercise 1: 1 (Watashi wa) gakusei ja arimasen. Anata wa? 2 (Sore wa) shinkansen desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu.' 3 '(Kanojo wa) Nihonjin desu ka. Chūgokujin desu ka.' 'Sō desu ne.' 4 '(Kore wa) kanai desu.' 'Hajimemashite.' 5 '(Kanojo wa) Kankokujin desu.' 'A, sō desu ka.'

Exercise 2: 1 '(Sore wa) hontō no kōhī desu ne.' 'Je chigaimasu. Insutanto desu.' 2 'Ki-iro no kuruma wa anata no desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu. Watashi no kuruma wa midori-iro desu.' 3 'Kōhī wa?' 'O-negai shimasu.' 4 Asoko no hito wa Nihonjin ja arimasen. 5 (Kore wa) kyō no shinbun ja arimasen yo.

Exercise 3: 1 'Asoko no hito wa dare desu ka.' 'Mado no mae no hito desu ka.' 2 (Kore wa) kyō no shinbun desu ka. Kinō no shinbun desu ka. 3 'Sumimasen. Toire wa dochira desu ka.' 'Achira desu.' 4 'Nan desu ka.' 'Watashi no kippu desu yo.' 5 'Sashimi wa dō desu ka.' 'Māmā desu.'

Exercise 4: 1 Kōhī wa arimasu ka. 2 Basu de kükō made (e) ikimasu ka. 3 Pasupōto wa asoko desu/ni arimasu. 4 (Watashi wa) Nihongo de hanashimasu. 5 Ikeda-san wa ashita irasshaimasen/orimasen/imasan.

Exercise 5: 1 Saifu ni o-kane ga arimasu. 2 'O-kane wa hikidashi no naka ni arimasen.' 'Doko ni arimasu ka.' 3 'Kare wa Nihongo mo Chūgokugo mo hanashitmasu.' 'Sō desu ka.' 4 'Dare ga tegami o dashimasu ka.' 'Watashi ga dashimasu.' 5 Kyō wa ikimasen. Ashita wa ikimasu.

Exercise 6: 1 Yübe nomi ni ikimasen deshita. 2 Sugu uchi e kaerimashita. 3 Sashimi wa tabemasen deshita. 4 Shōyu to sashimi wa asoko ni arimasu. 5 Mō sugu owarimasu. 6 Hanbāgā to kōhī (o) o-negai shimasu. 7 Kanojo to Nihongo de hanashimassen deshita ka.

Exercise 7: 1 'Nannin issho ni ikimashita ka.' 'Hitori de ikimashita.' 2 'Rokujuen no kitte o jūmai kudasai.' 3 'Koko kara Nagasaki made ikura desu ka.' 'Niman'en desu.' 4 'Kare ni jukkai denwa shimashita.' 5 'Watashi no denwa bangō wa 654 no 2908 desu.'

Exercise 8: 1 'Pātei e nannin kimashita ka.' 'Sannin shika kimasen deshita.' 2 'Biru o mō ippai dake o-negai shimasu.' 3 'Itsu goro ikimasu ka.' 4 'Sore ni kami o nanmai tsukaimashita ka.' 5 '(Kore wa) roppai me no biru desu.'

Exercise 9: 1 'Kyō wa totomo atsukatta desu ne.' 2 'Shikki o kai ni ikimashita ga arimasen deshita.' 3 'Kono o-cha wa amari oishiku nakatta desu ne.' 4 'Se no takai hito wa chichi desu.' 5 'Totomo yashū hito desu.'

Exercise 10: 1 'Dō yatte gakkō e ikimasu ka.' 'Watashi wa basu de ikimasu.' 2 'Totomo jōzu ni hanashimasu ne.' 3 'Ōkisa wa?' 'Ōkisa wa chōdo ii desu.' 4 'Ano Toyota wa tomodachi no to onaji desu.' 5 'Yoku suki ni ikimasu ka.'

Exercise 11: 1 'Hagaki o nimai to (ni) kitte o rokumai katte kimasu.' 2 'Asoko ni suwatte matte kudasai.' 3 'Kyōto e itte Ryōanji o mite kaette kimashita.' 4 'Aruite nanopun gurai kakarimasu ka.' 'Chotto wakarimasen ga basu de (wa) nijuppon gurai kakarimasu.' 5 'O-tō-san o yonde kite kudasai.'

Exercise 12: 1 'Ano Nakajima Miyuki no uta wa oboete imasen ka.' 'Oboete imasen ne.' 2 'Doko no daigaku e itte imasu ka.' 'Watashi wa daigaku e itte imasen. Hatarakte imasu.' 3 'Sumimasen. Yūbinkyōku wa nanji kara nanji made aite imasu ka.' 'Shirimassen.' 4 'Sakana-ya no tonari no kissaten o shitte imasu ka.' 'Ie, shirimassen.' 5 'Ryōjin no tokoro e kaette imasu.' 'Itsu kaerimashita ka.'

Exercise 13: 1 'Itsu kara shodō o renshū shite imasu ka.' 'Rokunen gurai mae kara desu.' 2 'Maitoshi rokugatsu ni sanshūkan gurai ryōkō shimasu.' 3 'Kono utsukushii kuni ni itsu kara imasu/irasshaimasu ka.' 4 'Isogashikute mada yonde imasen.' 5 'Yonjū gonenkan kekkon shite imasu.'

Exercise 14: 1 'Dōshite atarashii sūtsukēsu o futatsu katta n'desu ka.' 'Raishū kaigai e iku n'desu.' 2 'Osoku kaette kita n'desu.' 'Dōshite desu ka.' 3 'Nihongo o yameta n'desu.' 4 'Naze konakatta n'desu ka.' 5 'Bōifurendo ga Amerika ni kaetta no de naite iru n'desu.'

Exercise 15: 1 'Mō owatta deshō?' 2 'Ashita Nihon o tatsu yotei deshita.' 3 'Ashita kuru ka mo shiremasen.' 4 'Sonna hon wa takaku nai hazu desu.' 5 'Iu tsumori deshita ga wasuremashita.'

Exercise 16: 1 'Haha ga tanjōbi ni kore o kureta n'desu.' 2 'Sensei, kore o sashiagemasu.' 3 'Shachō wa oku-san ni hon o moraimashita.' 4 'Tomu-san, kore o agemashō.' 5 'Yumiko wa Kunio ni purezento o agemashita/kuremashita ka.'

Exercise 17: 1 'Kunio, katte ageru yo.' 2 'Koko ni o-namae o kaitte kudasaimasu ka.' 3 'Rokuji ni kite moraimasu.' 4 'Kunio wa sensei ni haratte itadakimashita.' 5 'Shachō ga kanai ni katte kudasaimashita.'

Exercise 18: 1 'Doko ni sunde iru ka shitte iru ka dō ka kite kudasai.' 2 'Doko ni sunde iru ka oshiete itadakemasen ka.' 3 'Hiru made ni kuru yō ni (kite kureru yō ni) tanomimashita ga yoji made ni kuru to itte imashita.' 4 'Sensei wa seito ni tatte kure to (tatsu yō ni) iimashita.' 5 'Naze Nihongo o yameru ka kikimashita ka.'

Exercise 19: 1 'Hakubutsukan (to iu kotoba) wa dō iu imi desu ka.' ''Museum'' to iu imi desu.' 2 'Kanojo to nagai aida tsukiatte imashita. Sore kara kekkon suru to iu koto o kikimashita.' 3 'Rainen mata koyō ka to omotte imasu.' 4 'Konai to itte imashita.' 5 'Nan to iimashita ka.' 'Tsukarete iru kara mō neru to iimashita.' 6 'Mada denwa shite inai to iu koto wa jiko ni atta to iu imi ja nai desu yo.'

Exercise 20: 1 'Ano uta wa suki ja nai desu ka.' 'Daikirai desu.' 2 'O-ni-san no jōzu na supōtsu wa nan desu ka.' 'O-ni-san wa yakyū ga jōzu desu.' 3 Kanojo wa me ga totomo kirei desu. 4 Watashi wa kodomo ga futari imasu. Anata wa? 5 Nihongo wa dekimasu ga Kankokugo wa mada dekimasen. 6 Irimasen kara agemasu. 7 Kanojo wa ano takai doresu ga hoshii to itte imasu yo. 8 'Dekimasu ka.' 'Dekimasen. Kare ni dekiru ka dō ka kiite kuremasu ka.'

Exercise 21: 1 Watashi wa ikitaku nai desu. Kanojo mo ikitaku nai to itte imasu. 2 Iranai deshō? 3 O-ni-san mo ikitai to itte imashita ka. 4 Doa no kagi o shimeru yō ni shite kudasai ne. 5 O-kane wa minna naku natte imasu. 6 Kowasanai yō ni chūi shite kudasai.

Exercise 22: 1 Kyonen Nihonjin no oruna no ko to kekkon shita rashii/mitai/sō desu. 2 Ano sashimi wa hontō ni oishisō desu ne. 3 Konsāto ga mō owatta mitai/rashii/yō desu, kara nomi ni ikimashō ka. 4 'Hashi o dō yatte tsukaimasu ka.' 'Watashi no yō ni tsukatte kudasai.' 5 Kanojo no yō na hito ga daikirai desu. Minna to kenka suru rashii/mitai/sō desu kara.

Exercise 23: 1 Mō haru ni natta to iu ki ga/kanji ga shimasu. 2 Konban dekakeru ki ga shimasen ka. 3 Nagai aida tabete inai yō na kao o shite imasu. 4 Ano ie wa o-tera no yō na katachi o shite imasu. 5 Nanika nioi ga shimasen ka.

Exercise 24: 1 Ano yane no akai kuruma wa suki desu. 2 Kōhi o nonde iru oruna no ko wa dare desu ka. 3 Nihon wa jinkō ga/no totomo ōi kuni desu. 4 Ima anata ga hanashite ita otoko no hito wa dare desu ka. Mukashi kara shitte iru hito desu ka. 5 Kore wa Tanaka-san ga oku-san ni katte ageta hon desu. 6 Koko wa sore o katta o-mise desu.

Exercise 25: 1 Kono chikaku ni dokoka shizuka na tokoro wa arimasu ka. 2 Ano hito wa donna supōtsu ga dekimasu ka. 3 Hon o nansatsumo kaimashita. 4 Asoko ni daremo Eigo ga dekiru hito wa inakatta n'desu. 5 Konban terebi de nanimo omoshiroi bangumi wa yatte imasen.

Exercise 26: 1 'Issho ni itte mo ii desu ka.' 'Ie, hitori de ikanakereba narimasen.' 2 Rokuji made ni kaette koraremasu (korematsu) ka. 3 Nihongo de kakunakute mo ii desu. Rōmaji de kaite mo ii desu. 4 Sono yō ni hanashite wa ikemasen. 5 'Ichiman'en de ii deshō?' 'Ii desu yo.' 6 Keisatsu ni denwa o shinakereba narimasen deshita.

Exercise 27: 1 'O-tera o mi ni iku no/koto wa suki desu ka.' 'Suki desu yo, anata wa?' 2 'Manjū o tabeta koto wa arimasu ka.' 'Nai desu. Dōshite desu ka.' 3 Densha ja nakute kuruma de iku koto ni shimashita. 4 'Ie de Nihongo o hanasu koto wa arimasu ka.' 'Tokidoki arimasu.' 5 Itsumo okurete iru no wa dōshite desu ka.

Exercise 28: 1 Nihonjin wa Eikokujin yori yoku hatarakimasu ka. 2 Takushī de ikanai hō ga yokatta desu. 3 Fuyu wa Eikoku yori Nihon no hō ga samui desu yo. 4 Dochira ga hayai desu ka. Shinkansen soretomo Furansu no atarashii densha? 5 le de nomu yori bā de nomu hō ga tanoshii desu.

Exercise 29: 1 Kare wa watashi to onaji gurai (takusan) nomimasu. 2 Iwanai hō ga yokatta desu. 3 'Dore ga ichiban suki desu ka.' 'Watashi no ichiban suki na no wa ano aoi no desu.' 4 'Sakana wa dore gurai/dake/hodo ōkikatta desu ka. Kore gurai/dake/hodo ōkikatta desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu. Sonna ni ōiku nakatta desu. Mō chotto chūsakatta desu.' 5 Ani hodo se ga takaku nai desu ga kare to onaji gurai tsuyoi desu.

Exercise 30: 1 Kekkon suru mae ni takusan no oruna no ko to tsukiaimashita ka. 2 Nihon ni iku mae desu ka Soretomo Nihon ni tsuita ato desu ka. 3 Karera ga hanashite ita aida watashi wa nyūsu o kiite imashita. 4 Dekakete iru aida terebi o miyō ka to omoimasu. 5 Mae ni ikkai ikimashita ga oboete imasen ka.

Exercise 31: 1 Koko ni iru aida nani o suru tsumori desu ka. 2 Kare ga tsukiatte iru onna no ko o mita toki kare ga dōshite kanojo o aishite iru ka sugu wakarimashita. 3 Nihon ni iku to kaette kitaku naku narimasu. 4 Nagai aida sushi o tabete imasen. 5 Uisukī to wain o nomu tabi ni/to itsumo futsukayoi ni narimasu.

Exercise 32: 1 Watashi nara kotowaru to omoimasu yo.
2 Ashita ame nara/dattara/deshitara iku no o yamemashō.
3 Moshi juppun hayaku kita n'dattara densha ni ma ni atta
ka mo shiremasen. 4 Kirei de atarashikattara kaimasu. 5 Ima
sugu denwa shitara iru darō to omoimasu.

Exercise 33: 1 Nihongo o kaku koto mo narattara dō desu
ka. 2 Dō shitara ii ka doko e ittara ii ka wakarimasen
deshita. 3 Ashita tenki ga yoku nattara ii desu ga ne.
4 Ano kuruma o kawanakattara yokatta n'desu ga ne.
5 Nihon ni nagai aida ireba iru hodo suki ni naru n'desu.

Exercise 34: 1 le wa dorobō ni hairareta n'desu. 2 Gaikokujin
tōrokushō o tori ni itta toki ni shimon o torareta n'desu.
3 Okureta kara minna shikararemashita. 4 Naze Nihongo o
yameta ka kikaremashita. 5 Kare wa mō sugu shinu darō to
iwaremashita.

Exercise 35: 1 'Denki wa tsuite imasu ka.' 'Le tsukimases.'
2 Mado wa akete arimasu. Dare ga aketa deshō ka. 3 Minna
no nomimono-dai o harawasareta n'desu. 4 Densha wa
minna okureru to kaite arimasu. 5 Ikitaku nakatta n'desu ga
ikasareta n'desu. 6 Kare ga yaritaku nakutemo
yarasenakereba narimasen.

Key to Conversations

Conversation 2A

- B: Chieko, this is Professor Emura from Tokyo University.
Professor Emura, this is my wife Chieko.
C: Pleased to meet you.
B: My wife is an English teacher.
E: Oh, really? How do you do?
B: Professor, this is my son David. David's a primary
school pupil.
E: Ah, is that so? Pleased to meet you.
D: Pleased to meet you.

Conversation 2B

- A: Excuse me, are you an American?
B: No, I'm not. I'm English.
A: Oh, really? Are you a student?
B: Yes, I am. I'm a student in the Japanese department of
London University.
A: I see. I'm a businessman, you know. Forgive me, but
what's your name?
B: Mike.
A: Mike, is it? I'm Kunio, Sato Kunio. Pleased to meet you.
B: Pleased to meet you too.

Conversation 2C

- B: Excuse me, but this is the Dai Ichi hotel, isn't it?
P: No, it's not, actually. The Dai Ichi is the hotel over there.
B: Ah, it's over there, is it? Thank you very much.
P: Not at all.

I: Excuse me, but are you Mr Brown of ICI?
B: Yes, that's right.
I: Pleased to meet you. My name is Ikeda. I'm from
Mitsui. How do you do?
B: Pleased to meet you, too.
I: Here's my card.
B: Ah, thank you very much. And this is mine too.

Conversation 3A

B: Excuse me, my name is Brown. Is Mr Tanaka in?
C: Tanaka is not in at the moment.
B: Really? I'll call back later then.

Conversation 3B

A: Excuse me, where are we? Is this Shinjuku?
B: No, it's not. It isn't Shinjuku. Umm, it's Shibuya.
A: Is it? Does it go to Shinjuku?
B: Umm, just a sec. Yes, it stops in Shinjuku.
A: Is it the next one?
B: No, it isn't. It's the one after next.
A: Thank you.

Conversation 3C

B: Mr Katayama, hello!
K: Mr Brown? I haven't seen you for ages. Are you well?
B: Yes, thank you, I am. And you, Mr Katayama?
K: Yes, I'm well.
B: Mr Katayama, how about it, won't you have a cup of tea or something?
K: Yes, let's go and have a cup. Umm, how about the coffee shop by the station?
B: You mean Kadota, don't you? Yes, that'll be fine.
K: Shall we go by car or shall we walk?
B: Let's walk.

Conversation 4A

W: Welcome!
W: What will you have?
B: Umm, what's the breakfast today?
W: Egg and toast.
B: O.K. then, one breakfast, please.
W: A breakfast with coffee is that? Or with tea?
B: Coffee, please. No, no. I'll make it tea after all.
W: Will that be milk tea?
B: Yes.
W: Right, that's one breakfast with milk tea, isn't it. Please wait for a short while.
B: Excuse me. Have you got today's paper?

W: Yes, the papers are over there. We've got the Asahi and the Mainichi but we haven't got any English-language papers.

W: Your breakfast with milk tea. I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.
B: Thank you.
B: The bill, please.
W: Certainly, sir.

Conversation 4B

B: Excuse me, is there a taxi rank near here?
P: A taxi rank? Umm, just a second. There was one near the bus stop in front of that department store.
B: Thank you very much.

B: To Tarumi station, please.
D: Which part of the station do you want?
B: The front of the station, please.
D: O.K.
B: Driver, will we be there in a minute?
D: Yes, it's not far off now ... O.K., here we are at the front of the station.
B: Let me off somewhere around here please.
B: Keep the change.
D: Thank you.

Conversation 5A

A: When's your birthday, John?
J: It's next week, actually.
A: Is that so? My birthday's next week too, you know.
J: Eh? What day next week is it?
A: Tuesday, Tuesday the 17th.
J: Eh? Mine is on the 20th.
A: What year were you born in, John? I was born in (19)60.
J: Me too!

Conversation 5B

- B: Two 70-yen stamps and four postcards, please. And this letter to France, please.
X: Airmail or seamail?
B: By air please. Oh, and one aerogramme, please.
X: Will that be all?
B: Yes, that's all.
X: That'll be 700 yen altogether. That's exactly 700 that you've given me. Thank you very much.

Conversation 5C

- B: What time is the next train for Kyoto?
X: Ten past nine. You have fifteen minutes.
B: O.K. then, two adults to Kyoto, please.
X: Single or return?
B: Return. How much is it?
X: 9,000 yen. That's 10,000 yen you've given me. Here's your 1,000 yen change. Thank you very much.
B: What platform is it?
X: It's platform 5.
C: May I see your tickets, please? ... This isn't the train for Kyoto, you know, this is the Nagoya train.
B: Oh, what shall we do? We've got on the wrong train.

Conversation 6A

- A: Your Japanese is good, isn't it?
B: No, it isn't really. I've got a long way to go.
A: No, really. Your accent is very nice. It's no different from a Japanese person's. You really speak well, you know.
B: Do I? Thank you.
A: Is it difficult, Japanese?
B: Yes, it's very difficult. I've suffered a lot! The accent is fairly easy, but the grammar is tricky. And writing and reading are a great problem. There's katakana and hiragana and kanji too. It's extremely difficult to remember.
A: Yes, you're right there. It's a question of memory. Good for you, anyway!

Conversation 6B

- S: Makunouchi, mackerel sushi, eel and rice, tea, beer.
T: Two makunouchis please.
S: Two makunouchis, here you are. Anything to drink?
T: I'd like something cold. A beer please. What about you, Mr Brown?
B: I'll have a hot cup of tea, please.
S: Here you are, that'll be 1,200 yen. That's exactly 2,000 yen you've given me. Thank you.
T: Mr Brown, is this the first time you've had a packed lunch?
B: Yes, it is actually. But it looks delicious, doesn't it? What sort of things has it got in it?
T: First you've got rice. And this yellowish thing here is takuan, a pickle(d radish).
B: There are all sorts of things, aren't there? What about this red one?
T: Umm, that's a shrimp. It's not really red, they've just dyed it red. Anyway, let's eat. Itadakimasu!
B: Itadakimasu! This long thin thing is deep-fried prawn, isn't it? It's tasty. You put this sauce on top, do you?
T: That's right. It's a bit hot (spicy) ... Also, this blackish one is seaweed. It has an interesting taste.
B: I'm full up! I've eaten too much. But it was delicious.
T: Try this. It's sour plum. It's very sour, but it's excellent for indigestion!

Conversation 7A

- A: Excuse me, would you be kind enough to tell me how to use the phone?
B: (You want to know) how to use it? Certainly. Have you got a lot of 10-yen coins?
A: Umm, I haven't got much change. I'm sorry, but would you mind changing this for me?
B: Certainly. O.K. then, so first you pick up the receiver, and put in about three 10-yen coins, and then you dial the number. Do you see?
A: Yes, thanks. So, umm, first you pick up the receiver, stick in about three 10-yen coins, dial the number - 06 678 9809 - and that's it, isn't it?
B: That's right.
A: Thank you very much indeed.

- B: Not at all, the pleasure is mine.
A: Oh, as I thought, they're engaged. I'll wait a little and then try phoning again.

Conversation 7B

- Mrs K: Hello?
B: I'm sorry to be ringing late at night, but is that the Katayamas' residence?
Mrs K: Yes it is.
B: Is Kunio there?
Mrs K: Yes, just a sec. I'll go and get him.
B: Thank you.
K: Hello, Kunio here.
B: Kunio? It's John here.
K: Ah, John. I've not seen you for a long time. How have you been?
B: Very well, thank you. And you, Kunio?
K: Yes, I've been well too.
B: Anyway, Kunio, are you free the day after tomorrow?
K: The day after tomorrow is Saturday, isn't it? Yes, I'm free.
B: Well, would you like to come to Kyoto with me?
K: I haven't been to Kyoto for ages. That's a good idea. Yes, let's go together.
B: That's good. Where shall we go in Kyoto?
K: Let's first decide on the time and place to meet.
B: You're right.
K: Let's meet at the main entrance to Osaka station about 8 and take the 8.30.
B: Fair enough.
K: O.K. then, so I'll see you at 8 o'clock in the morning the day after tomorrow.
B: Yes, I'm looking forward to it.

Conversation 8A

- B: Excuse me, I'm looking for a bank. Isn't there one near here?
P: I'm not familiar with this area, actually. Try asking that policeman over there.
B: Thank you. I wonder if you could help me, I'm looking for a bank.
K: There is a Dai Ichi Kangin Bank over there but it's closed now. Banks in Japan are open from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m., you know.
B: I see. What shall I do? That's a nuisance, isn't it?
K: Your Japanese is good. Where do you come from?
B: Canada.
K: How long have you been in Japan?
B: Umm, for about four months.
K: Let me have a look at your Alien Registration card.
B: Just a sec. It's in my bag. Ah, I've got it. There you are.
K: Oh, you're a student, aren't you?
B: I've been studying at Hitotsubashi University for a month.
K: I see. And you live in Kunitachi?
B: Yes. I'm living in a dormitory at the moment but I'm looking for an apartment.
K: I see. Yes, that's fine.

Conversation 8B

- B: What's on TV?
I: I'll have a look and see. Documentaries and quizzes. Uninteresting programmes, the lot of them.
B: There's no film on, is there?
I: Umm, just a sec. No, there isn't. Oh, there is a period play on, though.
B: I'm not really interested.
I: Kurosawa's '7 Samurai' is on at the cinema, though. Do you know it?
B: I only know the name. Who's in it?
I: I don't remember. Mifune, isn't it?
B: Really? So then, what'll we do? Shall we go and see it?
I: Straight away, without eating?
B: Yes, let's go. And then after the film let's go and have something nice to eat somewhere!

Conversation 9A

- B: Hello, is this the Inoues' house?
I: Yes, it is. Are you Mr Brown?
B: Yes, that's right.
I: We've been expecting you. Kunio should be back in a minute, so do come on in.
B: Thank you. I expect he's late with his sports club or something, isn't he?
I: Yes, that's right. I am sorry, Mr Brown ... Do come this way. Shall I bring you something cool to drink?
B: Yes, please.
I: It's only wheat-tea, but here you are.
B: Thank you. It's nice and cold.
I: How much longer are you planning to be in Japan?
B: I'm not quite sure. I may be here for another year, but it depends on the money.
I: Are you studying something?
B: Yes, modern history.
I: Really? Why did you begin to get interested in Japan?
B: Umm, the reason I became interested in Japan is a bit complex, but it was probably because of my father's influence.

Conversation 9B

- K: Hello.
I: Hello. Your guest is here.
K: Mr Brown, I'm sorry I'm late. Wait just a bit longer, I'm going to go and get changed. Mum, where's Dad?
I: He's not back yet. Go and get dressed quickly! ... Mr Brown, how many brothers and sisters have you got?
B: Two, I'm the second son.
I: All boys, is it?
B: Yes, that's right. I've got one big brother and one younger brother.
I: Oh, really? What does your elder brother do?
B: Both of my brothers work for an airline company. Both may come to Japan next year.
I: Well! That's something to look forward to. Your parents'll be coming to Japan at some stage?
B: I wonder. My father might but my mother is unlikely to. She's afraid of flying.

- K: I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. What have you been talking about?

I: We were talking about Mr Brown's family.

Conversation 10A

- A: It's Mr Brown's birthday the day after tomorrow, isn't it? Shall we buy him a present?
T: Yes, I wonder what'd be good.
A: Something Japanese'd be good, don't you think? A fan or a furoshiki or something like that.
T: Yes. A school friend of mine is working at Mitsukoshi so I'll get her to look for something nice. That's an expensive place for everything, but maybe she'll give us a small discount!

Conversation 10B

- K: Let's drink a toast to Mr Brown! Cheers!
M: Cheers! Cheers!
K: Happy birthday!
M: Happy birthday!
K: Mr Brown, a speech, if you please!
B: A speech? O.K. Thank you very much, everyone, for coming today. It's the first time I've had such a splendid party. Thank you so much for making this splendid meal for me. And thank you, too, for the presents.
K: What presents did you get?
B: I got a fan, a furoshiki and a book. I got the fan from Chieko, and the furoshiki from Yumiko and Kunio. The Inoues kindly gave me the book.
K: By the way, how old are you today?
B: That's a secret!

Conversation 11A

- I: Excuse me (is anyone there?).
R: Hello.
I: Excuse me, do you have any rooms?
R: There are two of you, aren't there? Yes, we do. Just one night is it?
I: Yes.
R: Do come in, and I'll take you to your rooms.
I: Mr Brown, do you know what this is called?
B: I don't remember.

- I: It's called a kotatsu. There's a heater underneath. It's lovely and warm. Do sit down and stretch your legs.
- B: Mr Inoue, do you call this door a fusuma or a shoji? I've forgotten again which is which.
- I: It's a fusuma actually. But the most interesting thing in a Japanese-style room is behind you. It's a place called the tokonoma (alcove). You place flowers and kakejiku there.
- B: It's really splendid. Kakejiku means scroll, doesn't it?
- I: That's right, but I've got no idea what's written on that scroll. The characters are so old it's very difficult for me to read!
- R: Excuse me (I've brought the tea).

Conversation 11B

- B: I'm sorry I'm late. I thought I knew the place but in fact I didn't, so I got a policeman to tell me (the way).
- M: I'm sorry.
- B: Not at all. It's a rather good place, this, isn't it? What about Mr Inoue? He said he'd be coming, didn't he?
- M: Umm, I expect he'll be here in a minute as it's gone 9 o'clock.
- B: What about Mr Yamamoto?
- M: Mr Yamamoto's mother went into hospital yesterday so I think it's a little unlikely he'll come.
- B: That's terrible. What about Mr Katayama?
- M: He said he'd be late because of business at the office. I'm not sure if he'll finally turn up or not!
- B: Really? I told Mr Smith to come along today but he too said it was impossible!
- M: What a pity! Let's drink together then, just the three of us! Excuse me! Some beer, please!

Conversation 12A

- A: Mr Brown, do you have any likes and dislikes?
- B: Umm ... There aren't many things I don't like, actually. Only natto and manju. Apart from that I don't think there is anything particular I dislike.
- A: Sashimi and sushi are all right, are they?
- B: Sashimi and sushi are favourites of mine. At first I wasn't too keen (*lit.* there was some resistance to them) but now I like them a lot.
- A: What about Japanese (rice) wine? I heard that all foreigners like it.
- B: I wonder, I may be the exception, but I'm not too fond of rice wine!

Conversation 12B

- A: I expect you're good at sports aren't you, Mr Brown?
- B: Umm, I'm quite good at rugby, but apart from that I can't do much. What about you, Mr Amai, is there a sport you're good at?
- A: Baseball and softball. That's about it.
- B: Baseball is very popular in Japan, isn't it? I didn't know it was so popular. There can't be many Japanese who are bad at baseball, can there?
- A: Maybe you're right. Everybody plays it from when they're children, you see. Mr Brown, would you like to go and see a baseball match?
- A: Yes, I'd really like to.
- B: Who do you support?
- A: Me, I like the Giants. What about you?
- B: Me, I like the Hanshin Tigers!

Conversation 13A

- A: I wonder how today's weather will turn out?
- B: According to the weather forecast it's going to be clear, but somehow it doesn't look that way, does it?
- A: Yes. It looks as though it's going to rain so I expect the picnic will be off, won't it? It looks as if it's started to rain already.
- B: It's spitting, it seems. That's a nuisance. But it is clear over in the west, so I get the feeling it may clear up later,

Conversation 13B

- A: Have you seen the news this morning?
B: Not yet. Why?
A: According to the news there was a big earthquake in Tokyo. It was magnitude 5, it seems. That's big, isn't it?
B: Magnitude 5 is big. What about injuries?
A: I don't remember how many injured there are, but quite a few people died. Earthquakes are frightening, aren't they?
B: They are. It's lucky it wasn't a big one like the one in 1923.
A: Of course, but on the news they said be careful as there may be another earthquake soon.

Conversation 14A

- A: Good morning everybody! Today's guest is Mr John Brown from England. Mr Brown, what were your motives for coming to Japan? To study Japanese, I suppose?
B: Umm, yes. I had quite a few motives in wanting to come to Japan, but I suppose it was because I wanted to improve my speaking and listening ability.
A: I see. Next, apart from studying Japanese, what is it that you want to do most of all in Japan?
B: There are many things I want to do, but I want to fit into Japanese society and make lots of friends.
A: Next and last of all, what is the place you most want to visit?
B: Umm, I want to go somewhere where foreigners don't go much. I want to visit for example a place which has an interesting history, like the Goto Islands.
A: Really? Thank you very much.

Conversation 14B

- B: Which parts of Kyoto shall we go to?
I: Umm, which'd be good, a temple with a garden or somewhere where the buildings are interesting? There's everything in Kyoto, you know!
B: I'd like to have a look and see a Zen-influenced garden.
I: O.K. then, let's go first to the temple called Ryoanji. Ryoanji is a very interesting place. There are always lots of people, but I think that it's definitely worth seeing. Ryoanji is a typical garden which expresses the influence of Zen thought. It's a peculiarly Japanese sort of place.

- The garden is one with only white pebbles and rocks.
B: That sounds interesting. It sounds quite different to what we'd call a garden in the West!

Conversation 15A

- I: Have you experienced a culture shock in Japan?
B: Umm, it doesn't amount to a culture shock as such, but it took time to get used to all sorts of things.
I: Do you mean food, language, etc.?
B: Yes, and wherever you look it's all kanji, so at first I felt as though I was blind.
I: I bet you did. There were a few things you mustn't do and things you may do in everyday life, weren't there?
B: Yes, just a few. For example, you mustn't wear shoes inside the house. And the way of sitting is different too. It sometimes happens that you'll sit for hours cross-legged, doesn't it? That takes time to get used to!
I: Bathing is very different too, isn't it? You mustn't use soap in the bath, must you? And you mustn't pull the plug out either, must you? Because everyone else has to get in afterwards, haven't they?

Conversation 15B

- B: Mr Inoue, have you ever been to Kamikochi?
I: Not yet, no. It sometimes happens that I go to Nagano on business, but I've never been as far as Kamikochi. Why?
B: I've arranged to go there next week with a friend of mine.
I: It's probably just the right time for seeing Kamikochi. They say it's lovely and cool even in August.
B: You can come with us, Mr Inoue.
I: No, I can't. I'm so busy at the office that I won't be able to take a holiday this year.

Conversation 16A

- B: Do you know which has the bigger area, Great Britain or Japan? Is Britain a bit bigger?
I: No, Britain isn't as big as Japan.
B: Oh, really. But as for the population though, Japan has a much larger one, doesn't it?
I: Oh, yes. It's probably more than twice the size of Britain's, isn't it? And, almost all of Japan is mountain(ous) so there isn't that much space where people can live.

- B: Yes, the population density is very high, isn't it?
I: In Britain, there aren't any real mountains, I've heard.
Is that right?
B: Not really. There may not be any as high as Mt. Fuji, but
in Wales and Scotland there are a good number of
mountains.
I: Really? And then the climate is very different, isn't it? In
Japan the four seasons are clear(ly defined) but in
Britain I hear there are winter-like days even in summer.
B: You're right. But in Britain there isn't a rainy season,
and there are no typhoons.
I: You're lucky (*lit.* I'm envious). Britain is safer, it seems!
B: Yes, there are no volcanoes and no earthquakes.

Conversation 16B

- I: What's the matter?
B: My stomach is unbearably painful.
I: That's no good, is it? Since when?
B: Since about three days ago.
I: O.K. then, take off your shirt and lie down over there.
Mmm, I'd better take an X-ray.

I: You've got gastroenteritis. There's no need to worry.
For a while you ought to keep away from cigarettes
and alcohol.
B: May I eat normally?
I: You shouldn't eat too much. And you should refrain
from hot spicy things. I'll give you some medicine. Take
it before meals.
B: Thank you.
I: Take care.

Conversation 17A

- I: John, dinner is ready. Eat it before it gets cold.
B: Itadakimasu.
I: John, there's not long now before you go back home, is
there? Before you leave Japan are there any other things
you want to do or places you want to see?
B: There are. The other day when I passed Mt. Fuji on the
bullet train, I thought I'd really like to try climbing it
sometime.
I: Really? That's a good idea.

- B: Have you ever climbed it?
I: When I was younger I climbed it just once.
B: What was it like?
I: The feeling on reaching the top is great, but it's hard
work while you're climbing, you know.
B: I bet it is. Mmm, before I go back I'd love to try
climbing it... Thank you for the meal.
Mrs I: A pleasure.

Conversation 17B

- S: Today let's practise *mae*, *ato*, *toki*, *to*, O.K.? First, let's try
making sentences using *mae*. Yes, Tom, go ahead.
Anything'll do.
T: Umm, 'Before I came to Japan, I couldn't speak
Japanese, but now I can a little.'
S: Good. Next, try making a sentence using *ato*.
J: 'After lectures finish I'm going to a bar with friends and
after that I'm going to another bar.'
S: That's fine. Next is *toki*.
M: 'The other day when I went to a bar, I drank alcohol and
sang songs.'
S: Good.
T: Can I do another one?
S: Yes, go on.
T: 'Just as I was about to go out of the door, I got a call
from Mary.'
S: That's a very good sentence. Lastly *to*. Yes, John!
J: 'I always go for a drink when lectures finish. And I
always come back drunk when I go out for a drink.'
S: That's fine.

Conversation 18A

- B: Mr Inoue, I've been in Japan for three months now but I
get the feeling my Japanese hasn't progressed at all.
I: It's not true that it hasn't progressed. But in another two
or three months, it'll get much better, I'm sure.
B: But what do you think I should do to get better much
sooner?
I: Umm, if it's a question of vocabulary, why don't you
listen to the news every day, and take down the words
you don't know? If you do that, the number of words
will grow, won't it?

- B: But I wonder what I should do to be able to speak much more fluently.
 I: That's a question of time.
 B: I should have studied more before coming to Japan!

Conversation 18B

- B: If we'd gone by taxi, we might have been there by now.
 I: We'll soon get there.
 B: Shouldn't we have got him to write us a map?
 I: No, we don't need a map. This is Aoyamadori, O.K.? I think if we go straight down here and turn left at the third set of lights, it should be 2 *ban*.
 B: Really? But why don't we try asking someone?
 I: No need for that. It's close by here.

 B: Shouldn't we have taken the second turning on the left?
 I: Maybe. Let's take a taxi if we don't find it in another five minutes.
 B: If there is one!
 I: Take us to Aoyama 1 *chome*, 2 *ban*, 6 go please.

Conversation 19A

- B: Good morning.
 I: Morning. What's the matter, Mr Brown? It looks like another hangover, is it?
 B: That's right. I was taken to a karaoke bar last night by some friends.
 I: I bet that was fun, wasn't it? The karaoke, I mean?
 B: Umm, I said I didn't want to sing, but I was made to. However much I said I was tone deaf, they said they wanted to hear an English song, and I thought I'd be told off if I didn't sing so I sang 'Greensleeves'.
 I: I bet that went down well.
 B: It seems to have done. But it was awful, being made to drink even though I didn't want to.
 I: John, you've got to get a bit stronger!

Conversation 19B

- B: Why are you crying?
 Y: My father has said that he won't let me go and study abroad.
 B: Why have you suddenly been told that it's no good?

- Y: My father intends to make me do hanayome shugyo as soon as I've finished school.
 B: What's hanayome shugyo?
 Y: It's preparing for marriage, by learning the tea-ceremony, flower arranging, and cooking.
 B: Preparation for marriage? But have you got a fiancé (*lit. partner*)?
 Y: No, I'm going to be made to have an arranged marriage.
 B: An arranged marriage? What are you going to do?
 Y: I suppose I'll have to do as I'm told!

Conversation 20A

- A: Why don't you try these on?
 B: These?! You must be joking. I don't want these!
 A: Why? They're nice.
 B: They're not my cup of tea. What about these?
 A: They're nice. Are you going to try them on?
 B: Mmm, I will.

 B: They're a bit long, aren't they?
 A: Not really. They're just right, I think.
 B: O.K. I'll have them. Excuse me, can I have these please?
 X: Yes, that's 4,000 yen.
 B: Great. Shall we go and have a cup of tea?

Conversation 20B

- A: Is Mr Yoshida there?
 B: Who is speaking?
 A: My name's Tanaka.
 B: Just a moment ... He's not at his desk at the moment.
 A: I see. Can I leave a message?
 B: Yes, do.
 A: I shall call on him tomorrow at eleven. Would you tell him that, please?
 B: Certainly, I'll pass that on to him.

Mini-dictionary

English-Japanese

Verbs are given in both plain and *masu* forms. Numbers refer to chapter, but where we give a chapter number immediately followed by n. and another number the latter identifies a particular note in that chapter's conversation piece.

ability chikara
able to dekiru/dekimasu; 15
about goro, gurai; 5, 8
about (regarding) ni tsuite
abroad kaigai (e)
accent hatsuon
accident (have an) jiko (ni au/aimasu)
according to ni yoru to ... sō desu; 13n.1
advertisement kōkoku
afraid kowai
after(wards) -te kara; 7, ato ni/de; 17
afternoon gogo
again mata
ages, I haven't seen you for (o)hisashiburi desu.
ago mae; 8
airmail kōkūbin
airport kūkō
alcohol arukōru
alcoholic drink o-sake
alien registration card gaikokujin tōrokushōmeishō
alive, be ikiru/ikimasu; 8
all zenbu
all (everyone) mi(n)na
all right ii
alone hitoru de
along, go o iku/ikimasu; 4
already mō; 3

also mo
although no ni, ga; 4, 9
altogether zenbu de
always itsumo; 14
a.m. gozen
ambulance kyūkyūsha
amount ryō
amusing omoshiroi
and then, so sore kara, soshite; 4, 7, 9
anybody, 14
anyone, 14
anything, 14
anywhere, 14
apartment apāto
apologize ayamaru/ayamarimasu
appear, 13
April shigatsu
argue kenka suru/shimasu
arrest taiho suru/shimasu
arrive töchaku suru/shimasu, tsuku/tsukimasu
article kiji
as ... as hodo gurai; 16
as soon/far/long as ..., 17
ask kiku/kikimasu; 11
ask (for) tanomu/tanomimasu; 11
asleep, be nete iru/imasu; 7
at ni/dc; 3, 4
attach st. tsukeru/tsukemasu
August hachigatsu
aunt oba(-san); 9

autumn aki
awful hidoi

back ushiro
back, come kaette kuru/kimasu
bad warui
bad at heta; 12
bag kaban
baggage nimotsu
bang vt. batan to shimeru/shimemasu; 6
bank ginkō
bank account kōza
bar bā
baseball yakyū
bath n. (o-)furo
bath vt. (o)furo ni hairu/hairimasu
be da/desu, aru/arimasu, iru/imasu, irassharu/irasshaimasu, oru/orimasu; 2, 3, 20
be (on TV) ni deru/demasu
beautiful utsukushii
because no de, kara; 9
become naru/narimasu; 6, 12
bed, go to neru/nemasu
beer biru
before mae; 5, 17
begin (to) hajimeru/hajimemasu
behind ushiro
beside soba, tonari
best ichiban ii; 16
better, 16
between no aida (ni); 17
beyond mukō
big ōkii, ōki na; 6
bike ōtobai
birthday tanjōbi
bit sukowski, chotto; 5
black kuroi
blow up vi. bakuhatsu suru/shimasu
blue aoi
board ni noru/norimasu
boil vt. waku/wakimasu
boil vt. wakasu/wakashimasu
bomb n. bakudan
book/shop bonya(-san)
boring tsumaranai
born, be umareru/umaremasu
borrow kariru/karimasu
boss bosu
both mo ... mo, ryōhō; 2, 14, 16
bottle bin
bottle (counter) hon; 5
bottom shita
box hako
boy otoko no ko
boyfriend bōfurendo
bread pan
break vt. kowasu/kowashimasu
break down koshō suru/shimasu
breakfast chōshoku, asagohan
bring motté kuru/kimasu, tsurete kuru/kimasu; 7
brother otōto, ani, o-ni-san; 9
brothers (go-)kyōdai; 9
brown chairo (no); 3
browse tachiyomi suru/shimasu
building biru, tatemono
bullet train shinkansen
bump into ni deau/deaimasu
burglar dorobō
bus(stop) basu(tei)
business, on shigoto de
businessman kaishain, sarafiman
busy isogashii
but ga, no ni, keredo(mo) shikashi; 4, 9
buy kau/kaimasu
by de, ni, ni yotte; 3, 4, 19
by (four o'clock) made ni

call (derwa o) kakeru/kakemasu, yobu/yobimasu
called, 11
calligraphy shodō
camera kamera
can koto ga dekiru/dekimasu; 15
can do dekiru/dekimasu; 12
capital shuto

car kuruma
card kādo
cards (playing) toranpu
care kamau/kamaimasu; 15
careful, be chūi suru/shimasu
cartoon manga
catch (a train) ni noru/norimasu
catch cold kaze o hiku/hikimasu
cause, 19
certainly mochiron
chair isu
change n. o-kaeshi, o-tsuri,
komakai o-kane
change vt. kaeru/kaemasu
change vi. kawaru/kawarimasu
changed, get kigaeru/kigaemasu
character (Chinese) kanji
cheap yasui
cheaply yasuku
cheapo yasuppoi
check shiraberu/shirabemasu
child(ren) kodomo
China Chūgoku
Chinese adj. Chūgoku no
Chinese (language) Chūgokugo
Chinese (person) Chūgokujin
chips furaido poteto
choose erabu/erabimasu
chopstick hashi
church kyōkai
cigarette tabako
cinema eigakan
class(room) kyōshitsu
clean adj. kirei (na)
clean vt. sōji suru/shimasu
cleanly kirei ni
clean up katazukeru/katazukemasu
clearly hakkiri (to)
clever atama ga ii, kashikoi
climate kikō
climb noboru/noborimasu
close vt. shimeru/shimemasu
close vi. shimaru/shimarimasu
closed, be shimatte iru/imasu; 8
coat n. kōto

coffee kōhī
coffee shop kissaten
coin kika, dama
coke kōra
cold n. kaze
cold (to the touch) tsumetai
cold (weather) samui
collect vt. atsumeru/atsumemasu
collect vi.
atsumaru/atsumarimasu
collide shōtotsu suru/shimasu
come kuru/kimasu,
mairu/mairimasu,
irassharu/irasshaimasu; 20
come back kaette kuru/kimasu; 7
come in hairu/hairimasu, haitte
kuru/kimasu,
agaru/agarimasu
come off toreru/toremasu
come out deru/demasu; 8
come round asobi ni
kuru/kimasu
comic manga
company kaisha
complete, be dekite iru/imasu
completely kanzen ni
concert konsōto
continue vt.
tsuzukeru/tsuzukemasu
continue vi.
tsuzuku/tsuzukimasu
convey tsutaeru/tsutaemasu
cooking ryōri
cool (weather) suzushii
cool tsumetai
corner kado
correct naosu/naoshimasu
cost n. nedan
cost (of living) bukka
cost vi. kakaru/kakarimasu
country (nation) kuni
country(side) inaka
crash (cars) shōtotsu
suru/shimasu
crash (planes) tsuiraku
suru/shimasu

crazy kichigai (na)
cross (over) o
wataru/watarimasu; 4
cross, be okotte iru/imasu
cross-legged, sit agura o
kaku/kakimasu
crowded, be konde iru/imasu; 8
cry naku/nakimasu
cup koppu
cup (counter) hai; 5
cut vt. kiru/kirimasu

danger kiken
dangerous abunai, kiken na
date hizuke; 5
date, what's the nannichi
daughter musume(-san); 9
day hi
day after tomorrow asatte
day before yesterday ototsui,
ototoi
dead shinde iru/imasu
December jūnigatsu
decide koto ni suru/shimasu; 15
decide kimeru/kimemasu
definitely zettai ni
delicious oishii
density mitsudo
depart dekakeru/dekakemasu
department (academic) gakubu
department store depāto
desire(d) hoshii; 12
dialect ben
dictionary jisho
die shinu/shinimasu
difficult muzukashii
difficult to -niku; 6n.5
disappear, 12
dishes suteki (na)
dislike(d) kirai; 12
do yaru, yarimasu, suru/
shimasu, itasu/itashimasu,
nasaru/nasaimasu,
tsukuru/tsukurimasu; 10, 20
doctor (o-)isha(san)
documentary diokumentari

door doa
down shita
drawer hikidashi
dress doresu
dressed, get kigaeru/kigaemasu
drink vt. nomu/nomimasu,
itadaku/itadakimasu,
meshigaru, meshiagarimasu; 20
drink n. nomimoto
drunk, be yo(ppara)tte iru/
imasu
due to hazu, 9
during ... no aida; 17

early adj. hayai
early adv. hayaku
earthquake jishin
easy yashii, kantan (na)
easy to -yusui; 6n.5
eat taberu/tabemasu,
meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu,
itadaku/itadakimasu; 20
eat out gaishoku suru/shimasu
either mo ... mo, dochiraka; 2, 14
embarrassed, be hazukashii
empty, be suite iru/imasu; 8, 19
end (of street) tsukiataru
England Igirisu, Elkoku
English (language) Eigo
English (person) Igirisujin,
Eikokujin
enough jūbun
enter hairu/hairimasu; 8
entry, no shinnyūkinshi
escape nigeru/nigemasu
even if -te mo; 19n.2
evening yūgata, ban
ever, 15
every day mainichi
every month maitsuki
every week maishū
every year mainen, maitoshi
everyone, 14
everything, 14
everywhere, 14
example, for tatoeba

excuse (me) shitsurei
 suru/shimasu, sumimasen,
 gomen nasai
 exit deguchi
 expected to hazu; 9
 expensive takai
 experience n. keiken
 experience vt. keiken suru/
 shimasu
 explain setsuimei suru/shimasu
 explanation setsuimei
 extremely hijō ni
 eye me

 face kao
 fact, in jitsu wa
 the fact is that n' (no) desu; 9
 fall down ochiru/ochimasu
 fall over korobu/korobimasu,
 taoreru/taoremamu
 family kazoku
 famous yūmei (na)
 far tōi
 fast hayai
 father chichi, o-tō-san; 9
 favourite ichiban suki (na)
 February nigatsu
 feel (like) 13
 few sukunai
 film fuirumu
 film (movie) eiga
 fine kekkō (na)
 fingerprint shimon
 finish saigo
 finish vt., vi. owaru/owarimasu
 fish (shop) sakana (ya-san)
 flood kōzui
 floor yuka
 floor (counter) kai; 5
 flower hana
 flower arranging ikebana
 fluent ryūchō (na), perapera (na)
 fluently ryūchō ni
 fly tobu/tobimasu
 fond of suki (na); 12
 food tabemono

foot, on aruite; 7
 foot ashi
 for ni
 for (time), 8
 foreign gaikoku no
 foreigner gai(koku)jin
 forget wasureru/wasuremasu
 free (no charge) tada
 free (time) hima (na)
 French (language) Furansugo
 fresh shansen (na)
 Friday kinyōbi
 fridge reizōko
 friend tomodachi
 from kara
 front mae
 full ippai (na)
 fun n. tanoshimi
 fun adj. tanoshii
 funny omoshiroi, okashii

 garden niwa, teien
 German (language) Doitsugo
 get (become) naru/narimasu; 6
 get (call) yobu/yobimasu
 get (receive) morau/moraimasu,
 itadaku/itadakimasu; 10
 get someone to do, 10
 get up okiru/okimasu
 get used to nareru/naremamu
 girl orna no ko
 girlfriend gārufurendo
 give, 10
 give up akirameru/akiramemasu
 given, be, 10
 glass koppu
 glass (counter) hai
 go iku/ikimasu,
 irassharu/irasshaimasu,
 mairu/mairimasu; 20
 go home kaeru/kaerimasu
 go in hairu/hairimasu; 8
 go off (bomb) bakuhatstu
 suru/shimasu
 go out deru/demasu,
 dekakeru/dekakemasu

go out for a drink nomi ni
 iku/ikimasu
 go out with to
 tsukiau/tsukiaimasu
 good ii, yoroshii; 4n.6
 good at jōzu (na), umai; 12
 good many, 14
 grandfather, 9
 grandmother, 9
 great ökii
 green midori-iro (no)
 guest (o-)kyaku(-sama)
 guide ri. annai suru/shimasu
 guitar gitā

 hair kami no ke
 half past han
 hamburger hanbāgā
 hand te
 hand over watasu/watashimasu
 hang vt. kakeru/kakemasu
 hangover futsukayoi
 hard adj. katai
 hard to adj. -nikui
 hard adv. yoku
 hat bōshi
 haunt tamariba
 have (got) aru/arimasu, motte
 iro/imasu; 3, 8
 have someone do, 10
 have to, 15
 he kare
 head atama
 headache zutsū
 hear kiku/kikimasu
 heart kokoro
 heart, learn by anki
 suru/shimasu
 heater hita
 hello konnichi wa
 help (someone) (o)
 tasukeru/tasukemasu, (ni)
 tetsudau/tetsudaimasu
 her kanojo (no)
 here koko
 high takai

high school kōkō
 him kare
 his kare no
 hobby shumi
 holiday yasumi
 holiday, go on ryokō suru/
 shimasu
 holiday, take a yasumi o
 toru/torimasu
 home (o-)uchi
 home, go kaeru/kaerimasu
 hope, 18
 hot atsui
 hot (spicy) karai
 hotel hoteru
 hour jū, jikan; 5, 8
 house ie, (o-)taku
 housewife shufu
 how dō yatte
 how (plus adj.) dore
 dake/hodo/gurai; 16
 how about, 3
 how long, 8
 how much, 5, 16
 how old (o-)ikutsu, nansai
 humid mushiatsui
 hungry, be onaka ga suite
 iru/imasu; 8
 hurry isogu/isogimasu; 7
 hurry, be in a isoide iru/imasu
 husband (go-)shujin,
 dannā-san; 9

I watashi, ore, boku; 20
 if moshi; 18
 ill byōki (na)
 immediately (ima) sugu
 important jūyō (na), taisetsu (na),
 daiji (na)
 impression, 13
 in (no naka) ni; 2, 5
 injure kizū o tsukeru/tsukemasu
 injury kizū
 in(side), be (no naka ni) haitte
 iru/imasu; 8
 instant insutanto (no)

instead -naide, -nakute; 7
intend to tsumori; 9
interest kyōni
interesting omoshiroi
interpret tsuyaku suru/shimasu
interrupt kuchi o dasu/dashimasu
invite yobu/yobimasu, shōtai
suru/shimasu
it, 2

January ichigatsu
Japan Nihon, Nippon
Japanese (language) Nihongo
Japanese (person) Nihonjin
jazz jazu
joke jōdan
July shichigatsu
jumper sēta
June rokugatsu
just chōdo, dake
just like to onaji yō na/ni; 13
just right chōdo ii

kidnap yūkai suru/shimasu
kind yasashii, shinsetsu (na)
kind enough to, 7
know shitte iru/imasu; 8, gozonji,
zonjiru/zonjimasu; 20
know, get to shiru/shirimasu; 7
Korea Kankoku
Korean (language) Kankokugo
Korean (person) Kankokujin

lacquerware shikki
lady oba-san; 9
language kotoba
language, foreign gaikokugo
large ōkii, ōi
last vi. tsuzukou/tsuzukimasu
last adj. saigo (no)
last month sengetsu
last night yûbe
last week senshū
last year kyōnen
late osoi
late, be okurete iru/imasu

laugh warau/waraimasu
learn narau/naraimasu
leave vt. tatsu/tachimasu,
dekakeru/dekakemasu
leave vt. yameru/yamemasu
leave something behind
wasuremono o suru/shimasu
lecture jugyō
left hidari (no)
leg ashi
leisurely yukkuri to
lesson jugyō
let, 19
let's -mashō
let ... off orosu/oroshimasu
letter tegami
lie down yoko ni naru/narimasu
light adj. karui
light n. denki
like(d) suki; 12
likes and dislikes suzikirai
listen (to) (o) kiku/kikimasu,
ukagau/ukagaimasu; 20
little chīsa na, chīsai
live sumu/sumimasu; 8
loathe daikirai; 12
lonely samishii
long nagai
loo o-tearai
look at (o) miru/mimasu, go-ran
ni naru/narimasu, haiken
itasu/itashimasu
look for sagasu/sagashimasu
look, have a mite miru/mimasu
look forward to o tanoshimi ni
suru/shimasu
loose yurui
lose nakusu/shimasu
a lot (of) takusan (no)
love n. ai
love vt. aisuru/shimasu; 8
low hikui
lucky un ga ii
lunch hirugohan
lunchtime hiru

mad kichigai (na)
magazine zasshi
magnitude shindo
main entrance chūōguchi
make tsukuru/tsukurimasu,
suru/shimasu
man otoko (no hito), oji-san; 9
many takusan (no), öi
March sangatsu
marriage kekkon
married, be kekkon shite
iru/imasu
marry to kekkon suru/shimasu
match shial
matter, it doesn't kamaimeser; 15
may(be) ka mo shiremasen,
hyotto suru to; 9, 15
May gogatsu
me watashi
meal shokujii, gohan
meaning n. imi
mean vt., 11
mean to tsumori; 9
medicine kusuri
meet (ni) au/aimasu
meet, arrange to machiawase (o)
suru/shimasu
meeting kaigi
memory kioku
message (o)-kotozuke
middle naka
middle of, in the saichū; 17
mind kamau/karnaimesu; 15
minute fun; 5
moment, at the ima no tokoro
Monday getsuyōbi
money o-kane
month, 7, 8
more motto; 16
more, the ... the more, 18
(bit) more mö (chotto)
morning asa
most ichiban, mottomo; 16
mother haha, o-kā-san; 9
motorbike ôtobai
mountain yama

move vi. ugoku/ugokimasu
move vt. ugokasu/ugokashimasu
much takusan
museum hakubutsukan
must, 15

name (o)-nmae
name card meishi
near chikai
nearby chikaku ni
necessary hitsuyō (na)
need iru/irimasu; 12
neither mo ... mo; 2, 14
never, 14
new atarashii
news nyūsu
newspaper shinbun
next tsugi (no)
next month raigetsu
next week raishū
next year rainen
nice ii
nice and ... -te ii; 7
night yoru
no ie
no good dame (na)
none, 14
noon hiru
no one, 14
normal futsū (no)
normally futsū
not at all zenzen
not often amari
not very amari; 16
not yet mada
note nōto
note (money) satsu
nothing, 14
November jūichigatsu
now ima; 4
nowhere, 14
nuclear weapons kakuhéiki
nuisance, that's a
komaru/komarinamu
number kazu, bangō

o'clock ji; 5
 October jūgatsu
 odd okashii, okashi na
 of, 2
 off, be kaeru/kaerimasu,
 dekakeru/dekakemasu
 office kaisha
 often yoku; 6
 O.K. (good) ii, daijōbu (na)
 O.K. (not too good) mā mā
 old (people) toshiyori
 old (things) furui
 on no ue nī
 once ikkai, ichido, itsuka; 5, 14
 only shika (with negative), dake; 5
 open nt. akeru/akemasu,
 hiraku/hirakimasu
 open ni. aku/akimasu
 open, be aite iru/imasu; 8, 19
 opinion iken
 opposite n. hantai
 opposite adj. hantai (no)
 or ... ka ... ka, soretomo; 2
 orange n. mikan
 ordinary futsū (no)
 other hoka (no)
 ought, 9, 18
 our watashitachi no
 out, be de te iru/imasu, dekakete
 iru/imasu
 outside soto
 over, 4
 over there (a)soko, sochira, achira
 own, on my hitori de

 packed lunch (o-)bento
 painful itai
 paper kāmi
 parcel kozutsumi
 parent (go-)ryōshin; 9
 party pātei
 pass vi. tōru/torimasu
 passport pasupōto
 pay (o-kane o) harau/haraimasu
 pencil enpitsu
 people hitobito

perhaps tabun, moshi ka suru to
 period play jidai geki
 person hito
 phone (call) n. denwa
 phone vt. (ni) denwa
 suru/shimasu, denwa o
 kakeru/kakemasu
 photo shashin
 piece mai; 5
 place n. basho, tokoro
 place vt. oku/okimasu
 plan yotei; 9
 plane hikoki
 platform bansen
 play asobu/asobimasu
 play (e.g. rugby) yaru/yarimasu
 please o-negai suru/shimasu,
 kudasai; 4
 pleased to meet you dōzo
 yoroshiku
 pleasure, my dō itashimashite
 plug (bath) sen
 plum (sour) umeboshi
 p.m. gogo
 pocket poketto
 police(man) keisatsu(kan)
 police office kōban
 polite teinei (na)
 politician seijika
 popular ninki ga aru/arimasu
 population jinkō
 possibility kanōsei
 possible dekiru/dekimasu; 15
 possibly tabun, moshi ka suru to
 post (a letter) tegami o
 dasu/dashimasu
 postcard hagaki
 post office yūbinkyoku
 potato, fried furaido poteto
 practice renshū
 practise renshū suru/shimasu
 pray inoru/inorimasu
 prefer suki; 16
 preparation junbi, yōi
 prepare junbi suru/shimasu, yōi
 suru/shimasu

present n. purezento
 present adj. ima (no)
 president (company) shachō
 presumably osoraku; 9
 pretty kirei (na)
 price nedan
 prices bukka
 primary school pupil shogakusei
 probably darō/deshō; 9
 problem mondai
 professor sensei
 programme bangumi
 pronounce vt. hatsuon
 suru/shimasu
 pronunciation hatsuon
 properly chan to
 publish shuppan suru/shimasu
 pull out nuku/nukimasu
 pupil seito
 purse saifu
 put oku/okimasu
 put (in) (ni) ireru/iremassu

 question shitsumon
 question (problem) mondai
 quick hayai
 quickly hayaku
 quiet shizuka (na)
 quite kanari
 quiz kuizu

 radio rajio
 rain n. ame
 rain vt. ame ga furu/furimasu
 rainy season tsuyu
 raw fish (o-)sashimi
 reach todoku/todokimasu
 reach (arrive at) tsuku/tsukimasu,
 tōchaku suru/shimasu
 read yomu/yomimasu
 ready (yōi ga) dekite iru/imasu
 real hontō (no)
 really hontō (ni), sugoku
 receive, 10
 recent saikin (no)
 recently saikin

 red akai
 refuse kotowaru/kotowarimasu
 remember oboeru/oboemasu; 8
 reporter kisha
 residence o-taku
 rest vt. yasumu/yasumimasu
 return vi. kaeru/kaerimasu
 return vt. kaesu/kaeshimasu
 rice go-han
 right migi
 right, just chōdo ii
 ring (ni) denwa suru/shimasu,
 denwa o kakeru/kakemasu
 road michi, tōri
 roof yane, okujō
 room heyā
 room (space) basho
 roughly itsu goro
 round adv., 4
 rude shitsurei (na)
 rugby ragubi
 run hashiru/hashirimasu

 sad kanashii
 safe anzen (na), buji (na)
 safely anzen nā, buji nā
 sale bāgen serū
 same (as) (to) onaji; 6
 Saturday doyōbi
 sauce sōsu
 say iu/iimasu, mōsu/mōshimasu,
 ossharu/osshaimasu; 11, 20
 school gakkō
 sea(side) umi(be)
 seasons, four shiki
 seat, take a suwaru/suwarimasu,
 kakeru/kakemasu
 see se look at
 seem, 13
 sell vt. uru/urimasu
 sell vt. uretu/uremasu
 send okuru/okurimasu
 sensible goriteki (na)
 sentence bunshō
 September kugatsu
 set off dekakeru/dekakemasu

shall we -mashō; 3
 shape katachi; 13
 she kanojo
 shirt shatsu
 shoe kutsu
 shoot utsu/uchimasu,
 uchikorosu/uchikoroshimasu
 shop o-mise
 short (people) se ga hikui
 short (things) mijikai
 should, 16, 18
 show miseru/misemasu
 shut vt. shimeru/shimemasu
 shut vi. shimaru/shimarimasu
 shut, be shimatte iru/imasu
 sick byōki (na)
 sick of, be ni akiru/akimasu
 side soba
 signpost hyōshiki
 simple kantan (na)
 since kara; 8
 sing utau/utaimasu
 singer kashu
 single (unmarried) adj. dokushin
 (no)
 Sir sensei
 sister imōto, ane, o-nē-san; 9
 sit suwaru/suwarimasu,
 kakeru/kakemasu
 sit cross-legged agura o
 kaku/kakimasu
 sixth glass roppaimae
 size ōkisa
 ski suki suru/shimasu
 slam batan to
 shimeru/shimemasu
 sleep neru/nemasu
 slow osoi
 slowly osoku, yukkuri to
 small chīsai, chīsa na
 smell n. nioi
 smell vi. nioi ga suru/shimasu; 13
 smoke tabako o suu/suimasu
 snow n. yuki
 so, 9
 so as to, 12

society shakai
 soft yawarakai
 softball sofutobōru
 sold out urikire
 some, 14
 some ... other, 14
 somebody, 14
 someone, 14
 something, 14
 sometime, 14
 somewhere, 14
 son musuko(-san); 9
 song uta
 soon mō sugu; 4
 sorry sumimasen, shitsurei
 suru/shimasu, gomen nasai
 sorts of, all iroiro (na), ironma (na)
 sound oto; 13
 sound like, 13
 soya sauce shōyu
 speak hanasu/hanashimasu,
 hanashi o suru/shimasu
 spend (time) kakeru/kakemasu
 spend (money)
 tsukau/tsukaimasu
 spicy karai
 splendid kekkō (na), rippa (na)
 spoon supūn
 spoonful hai; 5
 sport supōtsu
 spring haru
 stamp kitte
 stand (up) vt. tateru/tatemasu
 stand (up) vi. tatsu/tachimasu
 start vt. hajimeru/hajimemasu
 start vi. hajimaru/hajimarimasu
 start to -hajimeru/-hajimemasu;
 9n. 9
 station eki
 stay (the night)
 tomaru/tomarimasu
 stay behind nokoru/nokorimasu
 steal nusumu/nusumimasu
 still mada; 4
 stop vt. yameru/yamemasu,
 tomeru/tomemasu

stop vi. yamu/yamimasu,
 tomaru/tomarimasu
 story hanashi
 straight massugu
 straight away ima sugu
 strange hen (na), okashii, okashi
 na
 street michi, tōri
 stretch vt. nobasu/nobashimasu
 strong tsuyoi
 student gakusei
 study benkyō suru/shimasu
 stupid baka (na)
 sugar satō
 suitcase sūtsukēsu
 summer natsu
 Sunday nichiyōbi
 suppose, I darō/deshō; 9
 supposed to hazu; 9
 sure, I'm not quite chotto
 wakarimasen
 sweet adj. amai
 swim oyogu/oyogimasu
 swing, get into the chōshi ga
 deru/demasu

table tēburu
 take toru/torimasu
 take (person) tsurete iku/ikimasu
 take (thing) motte iku/ikimasu
 take (time) kakaru/kakarimasu
 take care chūi suru/shimasu; 12
 take off vt. nugu/nugimasu
 take (time) off
 yasumu/yasumimasu
 take out dasu/dashimasu
 talk hanasu/hanashimasu
 tall se ga takai
 taste n. aji
 taste vt. aji ga suru/shimasu; 13
 tasty oishii
 taxi takushī
 tea (English-type) kōcha
 tea (Japanese) o-cha
 teach oshieru/oshiemasu
 teacher sensei

telephone n. denwa
 television terebi
 tell iu/imasu,
 oshieru/oshiemasu; 11
 tell off shikaru/shikarimasu
 temperature (fever) netsu
 temple (o-)tera, -ji
 terrible hidoi, osoroshii, sugoi
 terrorist terorisuto
 thank you dōmo arigatō
 gozaimasu/gozaimashita
 that n. sore, are; 2
 that adj. sono, ano; 2
 that sort of sonna, anna; 2
 there (a)soko; 2
 thin hosoi
 thing (abstract) koto
 thing (concrete) mono
 think omou/omoimasu,
 kangaeru/kangaemasu; 11
 thirsty, be nodo ga kawaite
 iru/imasu; 8, 19
 this adj. kono
 this n. kore
 this year kotoshi
 thought n. shisō
 throw nageru/nagemasu
 throw away suteru/sutemasu
 Thursday mokuyōbi
 ticket kippu
 tidy (up) vt. sōjū suru/shimasu,
 katazukeru/katazukemasu,
 kirei ni suru/shimasu
 tidy adj. kirei (na)
 tight kitsui
 till made
 time jikan
 time, be on (for) (ni) ma ni
 au/aimasu
 tire, become tired
 tsukaretu/tsukaremasu
 tired, be tsukarete iru/imasu; 8
 to e, ni, made, to; 3, 4, 5
 toast tōsuto
 toast (drink a) kanpai
 suru/shimasu

today kyo
 together (with) (to) issho ni; 4
 toilet toire, o-tearai, benjo
 tomorrow ashita
 tonight konban, konya
 too mo
 too (much) sugiru/sugimasu; 6
 top ue
 town machi
 toy o-mocha
 traffic kotsu
 traffic lights shingō
 train densha
 translate yaku suru/shimasu
 travel ryoko suru/shimasu
 tree ki
 tricky yayakoshii
 trouble n. mondai
 trouble vt. (ni) meiwaku o
 kakeru/kakemasu
 true hontō (no)
 try ...ing te miru/mimasu; 6n.17,
 7n.4, 8n.1
 try on (shoes, socks, trousers,
 skirt) haite miru/mimasu
 Thursday mokuyobi
 Tuesday kayobi
 turn (corner) o
 magaru/magarimasu
 turn down oto o chisaku
 suru/shimasu; 6
 turn off keso/keshimasu
 turn on tsukeru/tsukemasu
 turn up oto o okiku
 suru/shimasu; 6
 turning (magari)kado
 typhoon taifu

umbrella kasa
 umm so desu ne, etto
 unbearably te tamaranai; 16
 uncle ojii-san); 9
 underneath shita
 understand wakaru/wakarimasu;
 12
 uninteresting omoshiroku nai

university daigaku
 unlike to chigatte; 13
 unpleasant iya (na)
 until made; 17
 us watashitachi
 use tsukau/tsukaimasu
 used to, be ni narete iru/imasu
 used to, get ni nareru/naremamu
 useless dame (na)
 usual futsu (no)
 usually futsu

various iroiro (na), iron(na)
 very totomo, amari (with negative); 6
 via kelyu
 view keshiki
 view (opinion) iken
 visit tazuneru/tazunemasu
 visitor o-kyaku-san
 volcano kazan

wait (for) o matsu/machimasu
 walk aruku/arukimasu
 wallet saifu
 want (to), 12
 war sensō
 ward ku; 18
 warm atatakai, attakai
 wash arau/araimasu
 watch n. tokei
 watch set look at
 water mizu
 water (drinking) o-mizu
 way to/of -kata; 7n.1
 we watashitachi
 weak yowai
 weapon buki, heihi
 wear kiru/kimasu,
 haku/hakimasu,
 kaburu/kaburimasu; 15n.2
 weather (forecast) tenki(yohō)
 Wednesday suiyoobi
 week shūkan; 5
 well adj. (o-)genki (na)
 well adv. yoku, jōzu ni
 what n. nani(i); 3

what adj. dono; 3
 whatever, 15
 when itsu, toki; 3, 17
 whenever, 15
 where doko, dochira; 3
 wherever, 15
 whether ka dō ka; 11
 which n. dore
 which adj. dono
 which one, 3
 whichever, 15
 while aida (ni), -nagara; 17
 whisky uisuki
 white shiroi
 who dare, donata; 3
 whoever, 15
 whose dare, donata no
 why naze, dōshite; 9, 18
 wide hiroi
 wife oku-san; 9
 wife, my kanai; 9
 win katsu/kachimasu
 wind kaze
 window mado
 wine wain
 wine, rice (o-)sake
 wing tsubasa.

winter fuyu
 wish, 18
 with de, to, (to) issho ni; 3, 4
 without ...ing, 7
 wonder, I deshō ka; 9
 wood ki
 word kotoba, tango
 word processor wā puro
 work n. shigoto, kaisha
 work vi. hataraku/hatarakimasu; 8
 world yo no naka
 worry n. shinpai
 worry vi. shinpai suru/shimasu
 would, 16
 write kaku/kakimasu
 writer sakka
 wrong, it's chigau/chigaimasu

year toshi, nen; 5, 8
 yellow kilroi, kiro (no)
 yen en
 yes hai
 yesterday kinō
 yet mada, mo; 4
 you anata(tachi)
 young wakai
 your anata(tachi) no

Japanese-English

à oh
 à that way; 6
 abunai dangerous
 achira over there
 agaru/agarimasu go up, come in;
 20
 ageru/agemasu give; 10
 agura o kaku/kakimasu sit cross-legged
 ai love n.
 aida while, during, between; 17
 aisuru/shimasu love vt.; 8
 aite another person, partner
 aite iru/imasu be open; 8

aji taste
 aji ga suru/shimasu taste; 13
 aka-chan baby
 akai red
 akarui light adj.
 akeru/akemasu open vi.
 akiru/akimasu become sick of
 akirameru/akiramemasu give up
 aku/akimasu open vi.
 amai sweet
 amari too much, not very; 5, 6, 16
 ame rain n.
 ame ga furu/furimasu rain vi.
 Amerika America

Amerikajin American (person)
 ana hole
 anata you
 anatatachi you
 ani big brother; 9
 anki suru/shimasu learn off by heart
 anna that sort of
 anna ni that much
 (go) annai suru/shimasu guide
 anō that adj.; 3
 anō umm
 anzen (na) safe
 aoi blue
 apāto apartment, flat
 arau/araimasu wash
 arawasu/arawashimasu express
 are that n.
 arigatō/arigatō gozaimasu thank you; 4
 aru/arimasu be, have; 3, 12
 aru certain, some; 14
 aruite on foot; 7
 aruku/arukimasu walk v.
 asa morning
 asa-gohan breakfast
 asatte the day after tomorrow
 aashi leg, foot
 ashita tomorrow
 asobi ni kuru/kimasu come round
 asobu/asobimasu play
 asoko over there
 atama ga ii clever
 atama ga itai have a headache
 atarashii new
 atatakai warm
 ato after(wards), remaining; 5n, 9
 atsui hot
 atsumaru/atsumarimasu gather vt.
 atsumeru/atsumemasu gather vt.
 attakai warm
 au/aimasu meet
 ayamaru/ayamarimasu apologize
 ã yatte, 6
 (o)-azukari shimasu/itashimasu receive

-ba if; 15, 18
 bā bar
 bāgen sēru sale
 baito part-time work
 baka (na) stupid
 bakari just, nothing but; 8n, 10
 bakudan bomb
 bakuhatsu suru/shimasu blow up vi.
 ban evening
 bangō number
 bangumi programme
 basho place, space
 basu bus
 basu tei bus stop
 batan to (shimeru/shimemasu) slam
 ben dialect
 benkyō suru/shimasu study
 (o)-bentō packed lunch
 betsu ni (not) particularly
 bīru beer
 bōifurendo boyfriend
 boku I; 20
 bōshi o kaburu (kaburimasu) wear a hat
 bosu boss
 buji (na) safe
 bukka prices, cost of living
 bunpō grammar
 bunshō sentence
 byōki (na) sick, ill
 cha/o-cha tea, tea ceremony
 chairo (na) brown
 chan to properly
 chekkuin suru/shimasu check in
 chichi father; 9
 (to) chigatte unlike
 chigau/chigalmasu be different; 2, 6
 chikaku nearby
 chikara strength, ability
 chīsal/chīsa na small
 chizu map
 chōdo just; 17

chōshi ga deru/demasu get into the swing of things
 chotto a bit, little
 Chūgoku China
 Chūgokugo Chinese (language)
 Chūgokujin Chinese (person)
 chūl suru/shimasu take care; 12
 chūko secondhand
 chūō(guchi) central (exit)
 chūshī ni naru/narimasu be abandoned
 da/desu be; 2
 dai cost
 daigaku university
 daiji (na) important
 daijōbu (na) O.K.
 dalkrai (na) loath(ed); 12
 daikōbutsu favourite (thing)
 daisuki really like(d); 12
 dake only; 5
 dake quantity; 16
 (10en) dama (10-yen) coin
 dame (na) useless, no good; 15
 donna-san (your) husband
 dare who; 3
 dareka, 14
 daremo, 14
 darō/deshō (ka), 9
 dasu/dashimasu get/take out
 datte even; 20
 de, 3, 7
 (ni) deau/dealmasu bump (into)
 de gozaru/gozaimasu be; 4n, 3
 deguchi exit
 de irassharu/irasshaimasu be; 2
 dekakeru/dekakemasu go out
 dekiru/dekimasu able, be ready, be complete, can do; 12, 15
 dekiru dake as much as possible; 16
 demō even, but, or something; 3n, 6, 14
 denki light, electricity
 densha train
 denwa telephone n.

denwa o kakeru/kakemasu telephone vt.
 depāto department store
 deru/demasu go out, appear (on TV)
 deshō probably; 9
 deshō ka I wonder; 9
 dete iru/imasu be out, have gone out, be on (TV)
 dō how (about); 3, 6, 11, 18
 doa door
 dochira, 3, 16
 dochiraka, 14
 dochiramo, 14
 dochira-sama who; 3, 20
 dō itashimashite a pleasure
 dōjo martial arts hall
 dōki motive
 dōkō where; 3
 dokoka, 14
 dokomo, 14
 dokutoku (na) peculiarly, peculiar to, unique to
 dokumentāri documentary
 dōmo (arigatō) (thank you), somehow
 donata who; 3, 14
 donatamo, 14
 donna what sort of; 3
 donna ni how; 6
 dono what, which adj., 3
 dore which n.
 dore dake, 16
 dore gurai how much/long; 8, 16
 dore hodo, 16
 doreka, 14
 doremō, 14
 doresu dress
 dorobō robber
 dōshite why; 9
 dō yatte, 6
 doyōbi Saturday
 dōzo go ahead, please do; 4

e to(wards); 3
 earogurantu aerogramme
 ebi prawn
 ebifurai fried prawn
 eiga film (movie)
 eigakan cinema
 Eigo English (language)
 ejji shinbun English language newspaper
 Eikoku Britain, England
 eikyō influence
 eki station
 eki-mae in front of the station
 en yen; 5
 empitsu pencil
 erabu/erabimasu choose
 erai good for you, great
 etto umm

fuan fan
 fueru/fuemasu increase vi.
 fuirumu film (camera)
 fuku fork
 fukuzatsu (na) complex
 fun minute; 5, 8
 funabin seamail
 furaido poteto fried potato
 Furansu France
 (o-)furo bath
 furoshiki cloth for wrapping things in
 (ame ga) furu/furimasu rain v.
 furai old (things)
 fushōsha injured (people)
 fusuma paper (sliding) screen
 futari two people
 futsū (no) usual, normal; 2
 futsū usually, normally
 futsukayoi hangover
 fuyu winter

ga but, and; 3, 4
 gai(koku)jin foreigner, alien
 gaishoku suru/shimasu eat out
 gakkō school, university
 gakubu (academic) department

gakusei(-san) student
 gārufurendo girlfriend
 gasu gas
 gatsu month; 5
 genki (na) well
 getsu month; 8
 getsuyōbi Monday
 ginkō bank
 gitā guitar
 go-chisō meal
 go-chisō sama deshita thank you for the meal
 gogo afternoon, p.m.
 gohan rice, (cooked) meal
 gomen nasai/kudasai excuse me
 go-ran ni naru/narimasu look; 20
 gōriteki (na) sensible
 goro about; 5
 gorufu golf
 gozaru/gozaimasu be; 2, 4n.9
 gozen a.m.
 go-zonji desu know; 20
 gurai about, extent; 5, 12n.1, 16

hagaki postcard
 haha mother; 9
 hai yes
 hai (counter), 5
 haiken itasu/itashimasu see, look at; 5n.12, 20
 hairu/hairimasu enter, go in
 haitte iru/imasu be in(side)
 hajimaru/hajimarimasu begin, start vi.
 hajimemashite pleased to meet you
 hajimeru/hajimemasu begin, start vt.
 -hajimeru/-hajimemasu start to; 9n.9
 hajimete for the first time
 hakkiri clearly; 6
 hakkiri shite iru/imasu be clear
 hako box
 haku/hakimasu wear
 hakusa white sand

han half past; 5
 hana flower
 hanashi story, talk
 hanashichū engaged (phone)
 hanasu/hanashimasu talk, speak
 hanayome shugyō bride's training
 hanbāgā hamburger
 harau/haraimasu pay
 hare fine weather
 hareru/haremasu clear up
 haru spring
 hashi chopsticks
 hashiru/hashirimasu run
 hataraku/hatarakimasa work
 hatashite after all
 hatsu departure
 hatsuon accent
 hayai fast, quick, early
 hazu due to, supposed to; 9
 hazukashii embarrassed
 (seki o) hazushite iru/imasu be out of one's seat
 hen area
 hen (na) odd
 heya room
 hi day
 hidari left
 hidoi awful
 higashi east
 hijō ni extremely
 hikaeru/hikaemasu refrain from
 hikidashi drawer
 hikōki plane
 hikui low
 hima (na) free
 himitsu secret
 hiraku/hirakimasu open vt.
 hirau/hiraimasu pick up
 hiroi wide, large (space)
 hirou/hiroimamu pick up
 hisashiburi not for a long time
 hita heater
 hito person
 hitokoto a word
 hitori de alone

hitotachi people
 hitsuyō (na) necessary
 hō side; 16
 hodo extent; 15n.1, 16n.5, 18
 (no) hoka (ni) other, apart from, in addition to; 14n.4
 hon(ya-san) book/shop
 hon (counter), 5
 Hon Kon Hong Kong
 hontō (no) real, true; 2
 hoshigaru/hoshigarimasu want; 12
 hoshii desire(d), want; 12
 hosoi thin
 hosonagai long and thin
 hoteru hotel
 hotondo almost (all)
 hyōshiki signpost
 hyotto suru to perhaps; 9

i stomach
 ii good, nice, right
 ichiban most, best; 16
 ichido onetime, once
 i-chōen gastroenteritis
 ie house
 ie no
 Igirisu England
 Igirisujin English (person)
 ikaga how; 3, 18
 Iken opinion
 ikite iru/imasu be alive; 8
 iku/ikimasu go; 7, 20
 ikura how much; 5
 ikuraka, 14
 ikura(de)mō, 14, 15
 ikutsu how many, how old; 5
 ikutsuka, 14
 ijō more than; 16n.3
 ima now; 4
 ima (no) present
 ima no tokoro at the moment
 imi meaning; 11
 imōto(-san) young sister; 9
 inaka country(side)
 inoru/inorimasu pray; 12

insutanto instant
ippai full
(go-)lippaku one night
irasshaimase welcome
irassharu/irasshaimasu be, come,
go; 20
ireru/iremasu put in, make (tea)
iro colour
iroiro (na) various
ironna various
iru/imasu be; 3
iru/irimasu need, be necessary; 12
ishi stone
isogashii busy
isogu/isogimasu hurry
isoide in a hurry
(to) issyo ni with; 4
isu chair
itadaku/itadakimasu have, eat,
receive, get; 7, 10, 20
itai painful
itasu/itashimasu do; 4n.1, 10, 20
itsu when, what time; 3
itsuka, 14
itsukara since when; 8
itsumo, 14
itte kuru/kimasu go (for a short
time)
iu/limasu say, tell; 11
iya (na) unpleasant

ja arimasen, 2
jazu jazz
ji writing
ji(kan) time; 5, 8
jidaigeki period play
jiki time, season
jiko (ni au/aimasu) (have an)
accident
jinan second son; 9
jinkō population
jishin earthquake
jisho dictionary
jitensha bicycle
jōdan joke
jōshaken ticket

jōtatsu suru/shimasu progress
jōzu (na) good at; 12
jugyō lectures
junbi preparation
juwaki receiver

ka, 2, 3
-ka, 14
-ka ... ka, 2
kaban bag
kaburu/kaburimasu, 15n.2
kachi worth; 14
kado corner
kādo card
kaeru/kaemasu change vt.
kaeru/kaerimasu go back/home
kaesu/kaeshimasu return vt.
kaette kuru/kimasu come home
kagiri as long as, extent; 17
kai floor, time (counter); 5
kaigai abroad
kaigi conference
kaisha company, work, the office
kaishain businessman
kakaru/kakarimasu take (time),
cost (money)
kakejiku scroll
kakeru/kakemasu pour, phone,
sit down
kakitoru/kakitorimasu write
down
kaku/kakimasu write
kakuheiki nuclear weapons
kamau/kamaimasu care, mind; 15
kamera camera
kami paper
ka mo shiremasen maybe; 9
Kanada Canada
kanai my wife; 9
kanarazu necessarily, always
kanari quite
kanashii sad
(o-)kane money
kangae idea
kangaeru/kangaemasu think,
consider

Kankoku Korea
Kankokugo Korean (language)
Kankolujin Korean (person)
kanji Chinese character
kanji feeling; 13
(o-)kanjō bill
kanpai cheers
kanpai suru/shimasu drink a
toast
konojo she, her, girlfriend; 2
kansei possibility
Kansai Osaka/Kobe area
kantan (na) simple, easy
Kantō Tokyo area
kao face; 13
kara and so; 9
kara after, since, from; 3, 7, 8
karada body
karai spicy, hot
kare he, him; 2
karera they, them; 2
karimasu (kariru) borrow
karuchā shokku culture shock
karui light
kasa umbrella
kashikoi clever
kashikomarimashita I have
understood (and will do as you
say); 4n.7
kashti singer
kata shoulder
-kata way to; 7n.1
katachi shape; 13
katai hard
katamichi one way
katsu/kachimasu win
katsudō activity
kau/kaimasu buy
kawaii cute
(nodo ga) kawaite iru/imasu be
thirsty; 8
(nodo ga) kawaku/kawakimasu
get thirsty
(to) kawaru/kawarimasu differ
from, change vi.
kayōbi Tuesday

kazan volcano
kaze wind
kaze o hiku/hikimasu catch a
cold
kazu number
ke(re)domo but
keiken suru/shimasu experience
keisatsu(kan) police(man)
keiyu (de) via
keizai economy
keizaiteki economic(al)
kekko (na) splendid, fine
kekkon shite iru/imasu be
married
kekkon suru/shimasu marry
kekkyoku after all
kendō the art of the (bamboo)
sword
kenkyū suru/shimasu research
keredomo but
kesa this morning
kesshite definitely
kichigai (na) mad, crazy
kigaeru/kigaemasu (get)
change(d)
ki ga suru/shimasu feel; 13
kiiro(ppol) yellow(ish)
kiji article
kikō weather, climate
kikoku suru/shimasu return to
one's country
kiku/kikimasu ask, hear, listen
to; 11
kimeru/kimemasu decide
kimochi feeling
kindaishi modern history
kinō yesterday
kinpen neighbourhood
kinshi forbidden
kinyōbi Friday
kioku memory
kippu ticket
kirai (na) dislike(d); 12
kirei (na) pretty
kiru/kimasu wear; 15n.2
kiru/kirimasu cut

kisha reporter
kissaten coffee shop
kita north
kitsui tight
kitte stamp
kō in this way; 6
kōban police office
kōcha (English-type) tea
kochira this one; 2, 16
kodomo child(ren)
kōhī coffee
koi thick, strong
koko here, this (place)
kōkō jidai high-school days
kōkoku advertisement
kōkūbin airmail
kōkū gaisha airline company
komakai o-kane small change
komaru/komarimasu be a
nuisance, get stuck
komu/komimasu get crowded
konban this evening
konban wa good evening
konbu seaweed
konde iru/imasu be crowded; 8
kondo wa this time
konma this sort of; 3
konnichi wa hello
kono this adj.; 2
konsāto concert
koppu cup
kōra cola
kore this; 2
korobu/korobimasu fall over
koshō shite iru/imasu be broken
down
koshō suru/shimasu break down
kotatsu table with heater attached
koto (abstract) thing; 15, 17
kōto coat
kotoba word, language
kotoshi this year
kotowaru/kotowarimasu refuse
(o)-kotozuke message
kowai afraid, frightening
kowasu/kowashimasu break

kōza o hiraku/hirakimasu open
an account
kozutsumi parcel
ku ward (of a city)
kuchi o dasu/dashimasu
interrupt
kudasai please; 4, 7
kudasaru/kudasaimasu give; 10
kuizu quiz
kūkō airport
kuni country (nation)
kurabu katsudō club activities
kurasu class
kureru/kuremasu give; 10
kurō suru/shimasu suffer
kuro(ppoi) black(ish)
kuru/kimasu come; 7, 20
kuruma car, taxi
kusuri medicine
katsu shoes
kutsushita socks
kuzusu/kuzushimasu change
(money)
(o-)kyaku-san/sama guest,
customer
kyō today
(go-)kyōdai brothers; 9
kyōmi interest
(ni) kyōmi o motte iru/imasu
have an interest in
kyonen last year
kyū ni suddenly
kyūkyūsha ambulance

mā well, anyway
machiawase arrangement to
meet
machiawase suru/shimasu
arrange to meet
machigaeru/machigaemasu get
the wrong ..., mistake vt.
mada not yet; 4, 8
made until; 17
mado window
mae before, in front of, to (time);
3, 5, 17

mafurā scarf
magaru/magarimasu turn
mai (courier), 5
mainen every year
mainichi every day
mairu/mairimasu go, come; 10, 20
maitsuki every month
maku-no-uchi lunch
mā mā all right (not too good)
manga comic, cartoon
ma nī au/alimasu be in time
manjū bean cake
-mashō (ka) let's, shall we; 3n.10
massugu straight (ahead)
mata again
matsu/machimasu wait for
mattaku completely
mawaru/mawarimasu go round
mawasu/mawashimasu dial,
turn round of,
mazu first (of all)
mazui poor tasting
me eye
-me, 5
(o-)medetō gozaimasu
congratulations
megane o kakeru/kakemasu
wear glasses
meishi name card
mekura blind
menseki area
meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu
eat, drink; 17n.1, 20
(o-)mial arranged marriage
michi road, way
midori(iro)(no) green; 2
migi right
mijikai short
mikan (an) orange
mina/minna all, everybody
minami south
miru/mimasu see, look at, watch
(te) mira/mimasu try doing ...
do and see; 6n.17, 7n.7, 8n.4
miruku milk
miruku-tei milk tea

(o-)mise shop
misuru/misemasu show
mitai seem, look like; 13
mitsudo density
mitsukaru/mitsukarimasu be
found
mitsukera/mitsukemasu find
mo, 2, 4
-mo, 14, 15
mo ... mo also, too, even
mō already, now; 4
mō (hitotsu) (one) more; 5
mō sukoshi a little more; 5
mokuyōbi Thursday
mondai problem, question
mōningu (sābisu) light breakfast
mono (concrete) thing
morau/moraimasu have, get,
receive; 10
moshi if; 18
moshi ka suru to perhaps; 9
moshi moshi hello
mōshi wake
nai/arimasen/gozaimesen I'm
sorry
mōsu/mōshimasu say; 3, 10, 20
motsu/mochimasu hold
motte iru/imasu have (got); 8
motte kuru/kimasu bring
mottomo most; 16
mugicha wheat tea
mukai opposite
mukashi a long time ago
mukō beyond; 3
muri (na) forced, impossible
mushiatsui humid, sticky
musuko(-san) son; 9
musume(-san) daughter; 9
muzukashii difficult

n umm
nado etcetera; 4
nagai long
-nagara while; 17
nai, 6
naifu knife

naka inside; 3
nakanaka rather, very
naku/nakimasu cry
naku/narimasu disappear,
die; 12
namae name
nan(i) what; 3, 5
nanbai, 5
nanban what number
nanbansen what platform
nanbon, 5
nandemo, 15
n'an desu, 9n.4
nangatsu, 5
nanika, 14, 15
nanimo, 14
nanji(kan), 5, 8
nankagetsu, 8
nankai, 5
nanmai, 5
nannen(kan), 5, 8
nannichi, 5, 8
nannin, 5
nansai, 5
nansatsu, 5
nanshūkan, 5
nante, 12n.4, 20
nanyōbi, 5
naosu/naoshimasu repair,
correct
nara if; 18
narau/naraimasu learn
nareru/naremasu get used to
narete iru/imasu be used to
naru/narimasu become; 6, 12, 15
naruhodo I see
nasaru/nasaimasu do; 9, 20
natsu summer
nattō fermented soya
naze why; 9
n'dattara if; 18
n'deshitara if; 18
n'desu the fact, reason is; 9
ne, 2
(o-)negai suru/shimasu please!
request

nekutai tie n.
nen year; 5, 8
neru/nemasu sleep, go to bed
nete iru/imasu be asleep
netsu heat, temperature
ni in, to; 3, 4, 5, 19
nibai twice; 16
nichi day; 5
nichijōtseikatsu) daily life
nichiyōbi Sunday
nigeru/nigemasu escape
Nihon Japan
Nihongo Japanese (language)
Nihonjin Japanese (person)
Nihonma Japanese-style room
Nihonshu rice wine
Nihonteki (na) Japanese
nikui difficult to; 6n.5
nimotsu luggage
ninki ga aru/arimasu
be popular
nioi smell; 13
nishi west
niwa garden
ni yotte by (means of); 19
n'ja nai desu ka isn't it the case
that; 12n.5
no's, of; 2, 3
no the fact, thing, one; 15
nō 'No' play
nobasu/nobashimasu stretch vt.
noboru/noborimasu climb
nochihodo later
no de and so; 9
node throat
nokoru/nokorimasu remain,
be left/stay behind
nomimono drink n.
nomu/nomimasu drink vt.
no ni although; 15, 20n.1
(ni) noru/norimasu get on, ride
on board
nugu/nugimasu take off
nuku/nukimasu pull out
nurui tepid
nusumu/nusumimasu steal

nyūin suru/shimasu enter
hospital
nyūsu news
o, 4
o-azukari shimasu/itashimasu I
receive; 4, 5, 6, 20
o-basan aunt; 9
o-bāsan grandmother; 9
oboeru/oboemasu learn,
remember
o-cha tea (ceremony), Japanese tea
o-daiji ni take care
ōfuku return
o-furo bath
o-genki well
o-hana flower arranging
o-hayō gozaimasu good morning
o-hisashiburi desu I haven't seen
you for ages
ōi many
o-ide ni naru/narimasu be,
come, go; 14n.1, 20
oishii tasty
oitsuku/oitsukimasu catch up
o-jama shimasu excuse me
ojisan uncle; 9
ojisan grandfather; 9
o-jūzu good (at); 6, 12
o-kaeshi change
o-kage-sama de thanks to you
o-kane money
o-kanjō bill
oka-san mother; 9
okashii, okashi na funny, odd
ōkii, ōki (na) big, large
okiru/okimasu get up
okite iru/imasu be up
okoru/okorimasu get angry
okotte iru/imasu be angry
oku/okimasu put; 18n.4
okuru/okurimasu send
oku-san wife; 9
o-mae you; 20
omedetō gozaimasu
congratulations; 16n.5
o-me ni kakaru/kakarimasu
meet; 20
o-miai arranged marriage
o-mise shop
o-mocha toy
omoshiroi interesting, funny
omou/omoimasu think; 11
(to) onaji same (as); 6
(to) onaji yō ni in same way (as)
o-naka stomach
onchi tone deaf
o-negai shimasu please; 4
o-nēsan big sister; 9
o-nīsan big brother; 9
onna woman
onna no hito woman
onna no ko girl
o-nomimono drink
ore I; 20
oiru/orimasu get off
orosu/oroshimasu let off
oru/orimasu be; 3, 20
Ōsaka-ben Osaka dialect
o-sake rice wine, alcoholic
drink
o-saki ni after you
o-sara plate
oshieru/oshieremasu teach, tell
osoi late, slow
o-somatsu sama deshita I am
sorry it was a poor meal
osoraku presumably; 9
ossharu/osshaimasu say; 20
o-sumai residence
o-taku residence
o-tearai toilet
o-tera temple
oto sound
ōtobai motorbike
otoko (no hito) man
otoko no ko boy
otona adult
otōsan father; 9
otōto younger brother; 9
ototoi day before yesterday
o-tsuri change

owaru / owarimasu finish, end
 vi., vt.
 o-yasumi nasai good night
 oyogu / oyogimasu swim
 o-yu hot/boiling water

 pasupōto passport
 pātei o hiraku / hirakimasu hold
 a party
 perapera fluent
 pikunikku picnic
 poketto pocket
 potsupotsu spit (rain)
 purezento present

 ragubī rugby
 rainen next year
 ralishū next week
 raijō radio
 rashii, 13
 rei example
 reigai exception
 reizōkō fridge
 rekishi history
 renshū practice
 renshū suru / shimasu practise
 rentogen X-ray
 repōto report, essay
 riyū reason
 rōmaji Romanized Japanese
 ryō dormitory
 ryōri cooking
 (go)ryōshin parents; 9
 ryūchō (ni) fluent(ly)
 ryūgaku study abroad

 sabazushi mackerel sushi
 sagasu / sagashimasu look for
 sai (counter), 5
 saichū in the middle; 17
 saifu wallet, purse
 saigo last
 saikin recently
 saikin (no) recent
 saikō excellent
 saishō first

sakana fish
 sakana-ya fish shop
 sake rice wine
 saki ahead; 2
 sakka author, writer
 sakkā soccer
 sakuya last night
 sameru / samemasu get cold
 samishii lonely
 samui cold (weather)
 samurai warrior
 sappari not at all
 sararīman businessman
 sashiageru / sashiagemasu give; 10
 sashimi raw fish
 satō sugar
 satsu note (money), book
 counter; 5
 sayonara goodbye
 se ga hikui short
 se ga takai tall
 seiji politics
 seijsika politician
 seijsiteki (na) political
 seikatsu life
 seito pupil
 seiyū the West
 seki seat
 seki o hazusu / hazushimasu be
 absent from one's seat
 sekken soap
 sen plug (bath)
 sengetsu last month
 senmenki basin
 sensei teacher, professor, Sir
 senshū last week
 sensō war
 sensu fan
 setsumei explanation
 setsumei suru / shimasu explain
 shaberu / shaberimasu speak, talk
 shachō company president
 shakai society
 shashin photo
 shatsu shirt
 shi and, 6n.4

shiai match
 shibaraku for a while
 shidai depending on; 9n.6
 shigoto work
 shika only; 5
 shikaru / shikarimasu tell off
 shikashi but
 shiki four seasons
 shikki lacquerware
 shimaru / shimarimasu shut,
 close vi.
 shimatte iru / imasu be shut,
 closed; 8
 shimeru / shimemasu shut,
 close vt.
 shimon fingerprint
 shinbun newspaper
 shindo magnitude
 shingō traffic lights
 shinkansen bullet train
 shinnyūkinshi no entry
 shinpai worry
 shinsetsu (na) kind
 shinu / shinimasu die
 shiraburu / shirabemasu check
 shiraiu / shiraimasu get to know
 shiroi white
 shiru / shirimasa (get to) know; 8
 shisō thought(s)
 shita under, below, bottom
 shitsurei (na) impolite, rude
 shitte iru / imasu know; 7
 shiyakusho city office
 shizuka (na) quiet
 shodō calligraphy
 shōgakusei primary school pupil
 shōji paper window
 shōka fūryū indigestion
 shokujī meal
 shokuzen before meals
 shōshō a little
 shōtai invitation
 shōtai suru / shimasu invite
 shōtotsu collision
 shōtotsu suru / shimasu collide
 shōyu soya sauce

shufu housewife
 (go-)shujin husband; 9
 shujutsu operation
 shūkan custom
 shū(kan) week; 5, 8
 shumi pastime, taste, 'cup of tea'
 shuppan suru / shimasu publish
 shuppatsu suru / shimasu depart
 shute capital city
 sō, 2, 3, 6
 sō appear; 13
 sobo grandmother
 sochira there
 sofou grandfather
 sofutobōru softball
 sōji suru / shimasu clean
 soko there
 sonna that sort of
 sonna ni, 16
 sono that adj.
 sore that n.
 sore ja well then
 sore kara and (then)
 soretomo or
 sorosoro soon, in a moment
 soshitara so then
 soshite and so
 sōsu sauce
 soto outside
 sotsugyō suru / shimasu graduate
 from
 sō yatte, 6
 sugiru / sugimasu too ...; 6n.16, 7,
 12, 15
 sugoi great, fantastic, terrible
 sugosu / sugoshimasu spend,
 pass time
 sugu immediately; 4, 17
 (o-naka ga) suite iru / imasu be
 hungry; 8
 suiyo-bi Wednesday
 sakāto skirt
 sakī ski
 suki (na) like(d); 12
 sukikirai likes and dislikes
 sukiyaki beef dish

sukoshi a little, bit; 5
(o-naka ga) suku/sukimasu get hungry
sukunai few
(o-sumai residence
sumimasen I am sorry
sumu/sumimasu live
sunakku bar
sunde iru/imasu live
supichi speech
supōtsu sport
suppai sour
suru/shimasu do, make, decide;
3n.11, 6, 9n.7, 15, 18n.3
sushi rice and raw fish
suteki (na) dishy, attractive
suteru/sutemasu throw away
sūtsukēsu suit case
(tabako o) suu/suimasu smoke
suwaru/suwarimasu sit
suzushii cool

tabako cigarette
tabemono food
taberu/tabemasu eat
tabi whenever, every time; 17
tabun perhaps; 9
tachiyomi suru/shimasu browse
tada free
tadaima presently, I'm back
taifū typhoon
taihen (na) awful, very
taiho suru/shimasu arrest
takai tall, expensive
takkyū table tennis
takusan many, much; 5
takushī (noriba) taxi (rank)
takuwan pickled radish
tamago egg
tamariba haunt
tame ni for purpose of, in order to; 15
tango vocabulary
tanjōbi birthday

tanomu/tanomimasu request, ask (for); 11
tanoshii enjoyable, fun
tanoshimi something to look forward to
tanoshimi ni suru/shimasu look forward to
taoru towel
tara if, when; 18
tari, 17n.5
tatemono building
tateru/tatemasu stand vt.
tatoeba for example
tatsu/tachimasu stand vi., leave, pass (of time); 18n.1
tazuneru/tazunemasu visit
tebukuro glove
tēburu table
tegami letter
teien garden
teikō resistance
teinei (na) polite
temae before; 3
te mo, 19n.2
tenkeiteki (na) typical
tenki weather
tenki(yohō) weather (forecast)
tera temple
terebi TV
terorisuto terrorist
tetsudau/tetsudaimasu help to that, with, and, if, when, once; 4, 11, 17, 18
tōchaku suru/shimasu arrive
toire toilet
(to) issho ni together (with)
toka and, etcetera; 4
tokei watch
tokekamu/tokekemimasu fit into, melt into
toki when; 17
tokidoki sometimes; 9
tokonomia alcove
tokoro place; 17
tokoro de by the way
tomaru/tomarimasu stop vi., stay

tomeru/tomemasu stop vt.
tomodachi friend
tonari beside; 3
tonde mo arimasen ridiculous, not at all
toranpu cards (playing)
tōri as; 19n.4
toreru/toremasu come off
tōrokushō registration card
tōru/torimasu take, pass vt.
tōru/torimasu pass vi.
tōsuto toast
totemo very (much)
totte iku/ikimasu take
totte kuru/kimasu go and get
tsubasa wing
tsugi next
tsuiraku suru/shimasu crash (nil) tsuite regarding, about
tsuite iru/imasu be on (light, TV, etc.)
tsukareru/tsukaremasu become tired
tsukarete iru/imasu be tired
tsukau/tsukaimasu use
tsukemono pickle
tsukeru/tsukemasu put on (TV), attach
tsukiataru end (of road)
tsukiau/tsukaimasu go out (with)
tsuku/tsukimasu go on, arrive
tsukuru/tsukurimasu make
tsumaranai boring
tsumetai cool, cold (to the touch)
tsumori intention; 9
tsurai hard work, tiring
tsurete iku/ikimasu take (a person)
tsutaeru/tsutaemasu convey, pass on
(ni) tsutomeru/tsutomemasu work (for)
tsūyaku suru/shimasu interpret
tsuyoi strong
tsuyu rainy season

tsuzukeru/tsuzukemasu continue vt.
tsuzuku/tsuzukimasu continue vi.

uchi home, house
uchi before; 17
uchikorosu/uchikoroshimasu shoot dead
ue top, on, above; 3
uisuki whisky
ukagau/ukagaimasu visit, ask; 3n.3, 20
ukeru/ukemasu go down well, receive
umai good at, tasty
umareru/umaremasu be born
umeboshi sour plum
umi(be) sea(side)
un umm ...
unagi bentō eel lunch
untenshū(-san) driver
urayamashii envious
ureshii pleased
uriba sales department
uru/urimasu sell
ushiro behind
uta song
utau/utaimasu sing
utsu/uchimasu shoot
utsukushii beautiful
uwagi jacket

wa (subject, object, topic particle) 2, 3, 4, 12
wain wine
wakai young
wakaru/wakarimasu understand; 12
wake, 18n.2
waku/wakimasu boil vi.
wā puro word processor
warau/waraimasu laugh
wari to quite
warui bad
washoku Japanese food

wasureru/wasuremasu forget; 15	yoko ni naru/narinmasu lie down
(o) wataru/watarimasu cross over; 4	yoku often, well
watashi I, me	yomikaki reading and writing
watashitachi we, us	yomu/yomimasu read
watasu/wataшимасу hand over	yopparatte iru/imasu be drunk
wazuka a little	yopparau/yopparaimasu get drunk
ya and; 4	yoroi than; 16
yabun osoku late at night	yoroshii good, all right, O.K.; 14n.6
yakyū baseball	(ni) yoru to according to; 13n.1
yama mountain	yotei plan; 9
yameru/yamemasu stop vt., give up; 12	yūbe last night
yamu/yamimasu stop vi.	yūbinkyōku post office
yane roof	yuka floor
yappari after all, as expected	yūkai suru/shimasu kidnap
yaru/yarimasu do, play	yuki snow
yasashii kind, easy	yukid destination; 5n.7
yasui cheap	yukkuri slow
-yasui easy to; 6n.5	yukkuri suru/shimasu take one's time
yasumi holiday, rest	yūmei (na) famous
yasumu/yasumimasu rest	yurui loose
yawarakai soft	
yayakoshii tricky	zannen (na) regrettable
yo, 2	zasshi magazine
yo (ni) (na), 11, 12, 13	zehi by all means
yo (no naka) the world	zenbu all, everything
yobu/yobimasu call, invite, get (a person)	zenbu de altogether
yōfuku clothing	zenzen (not) at all
yōi preparation	zettai (ni) definitely
yōji business	zonjiru/zonjimasu think; 20
yokatta see II	zubon trousers
yokatta desu that's good	zuibun a good deal
	zutto much (more); 16

Appendix 1

The syllables represented in the table on page 8 are given here in *hiragana*:

a あ	i い	u う	e え	o お
ka か	ki き	ku く	ke け	ko こ
sa さ	shi し	su す	se せ	so そ
ta た	chi ち	tsu つ	te て	to と
na な	ni に	nu ぬ	ne ね	no の
ha は ¹	hi ひ	fu ふ	he へ ²	ho ほ
ma ま	mi み	mu む	me め	mo も
ya や		yu ゆ		yo よ
ra ら	ri り	ru る	re れ	ro ろ
wa わ				
o オ ³				
n ん				

1 The *hiragana* symbol は (ha) is also used for writing the particle wa.

2 The *hiragana* symbol へ (he) is also used for e ('to', 'towards').

3 This *hiragana* symbol is used for the object particle o only.

The 'voiced sounds' ga, gi, gu etc., za, ji, zu etc., da, ji, zu etc., and ba, bi, bu etc. (rows 3, 5, 7 and 10 of the table on page 8) are made by adding a *nigori* mark (") to ka, ki, ku etc., sa, shi, su etc., ta, chi, tsu etc. and ha, hi, fu etc. respectively. (Pa, pi, pu etc. – row 11, page 8 – is made by adding a small circle to ha, hi, fu etc.)

Examples:

ながさき Nagasaki

ぎんざ Ginza (a main street in Tokyo)

だめ dame

ぶぶん bubun

Note that the long 'ō' syllable (ō, kō, sō etc.) is generally written 'ou', 'kou', 'sou', etc.

そう sō

じょうず jōzu

ほう hō

But there are a small number of exceptions:

おおきい ōkii

おおい ūi

The 'double consonant' is written like this with a small tsu:

かつた katta

まつた matta

ちよつと chotto

Other combined syllables are as explained in the Introduction. Study now the examples below:

げいしゃ geisha

しゅじゅつ shujutsu

しゅうかん shūkan

おちゃ o-cha

いちにちじゅう ichinichijū

おばさん obasan

おばあさん obāsan

きょうと Kyōto

きゅうしゅう Kyūshū

あな ana

あんな anna

かた kata

かった katta

Appendix 2

The small selection of *kunji* (Chinese characters) given below represents some of the more common ones the visitor is likely to see on the streets of Japan. Some of these may appear in *hiragana* as well. The words marked with an asterisk are in *kanakana*:

駅	(eki) station
地下鉄	(chikatetsu) subway station
切符売場	(kippu uriba) ticket office
改札口	(kaisatsu guchi) ticket gate
入口	(iriguchi) entrance
出口	(deguchi) exit
非常口	(hijōguchi) emergency exit
押す	(osu) push
引く	(hiku) pull
中央口	(chūō guchi) central exit
北口	(kitaguchi) north exit
南口	(minamiguchi) south exit
西口	(nishiguchi) west exit
東口	(higashiguchi) east exit
コインロッカー	(koinrokka*) coin locker

待合室	(machiaishitsu) waiting room
お手洗い	(o-tearai) toilet
便所	(benjo) toilet
トイレ	(toire*) toilet
化粧室	(keshōshitsu) powder room
男子用	(danshiyō) men
女子用	(joshiyō) women
使用中	(shiyōchu) engaged
故障中	(koshōchū) out of order
飲料水	(inryōsui) drinking water
タクシー	乗り場 (takushī* noriba) taxi rank
	駐車場 (chūshajō) parking
駐車禁止	(chūsha kinshi) parking forbidden
土足厳禁	(dosoku genkin) shoes strictly forbidden
立入禁止	(tachiiri kinshi) no entry
禁煙	(kin'en) no smoking
銀行	(ginkō) bank
郵便局	(yūbinkyōku) post office
医院	(iin) doctor's surgery
営業中	(eigyōchū) open
閉店	(heiten) closed

案内 (annual) information

受け付 (uketsuke) reception

ホテル (hoteru*) hotel

旅館 (ryokan) Japanese-style inn

喫茶店 (kissaten) coffee shop

Picture Credits

Jacket (front): AA PHOTO LIBRARY; centre; CORBIS: Jack Fields
bottom right and back cover; Sakamoto Photo Research
Laboratory left; ROBERT HARDING PICTURE LIBRARY: centre
above; GEOFF HOWARD: centre left above, centre right above,
centre left and top of spine, centre right and bottom of
spine; IMAGES COLOUR LIBRARY: Alex Sanders/Horizon
bottom centre above; NEIL SETCHFIELD: bottom centre; POWER
Stock: ZEFA top right